



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

NYPL RESEARCH LIBRARIES



3 3433 08231297 0

RDP

Scanned by Google

FRANZ THIMM & Co.'s
SERIES
OF
CLASSICAL
AND
ORIENTAL GRAMMARS,

AFTER
MATHIAS MEISSNER'S
EASY AND PRACTICAL METHOD.

PART III.
THE LATIN LANGUAGE.

Third Improved Edition.

LONDON:
FRANZ THIMM & Co.,
PUBLISHERS AND FOREIGN BOOKSELLERS,
24, BROOK STREET, GROSVENOR SQUARE, W.

1893.

[ENTERED AT STATIONERS' HALL.]

Digitized by Google

c

A NEW

PRACTICAL AND EASY METHOD

1616 OF LEARNING THE 15900-

LATIN LANGUAGE.

BY

J. H. P. SEIDENSTÜCKER.

AFTER THE SYSTEM OF



MATHIAS MEISSNER.

Third Improved Edition.

LONDON :
FRANZ THIMM & Co.,
PUBLISHERS AND FOREIGN BOOKSELLERS,
24, BROOK STREET, GROSVENOR SQUARE, W.

1893.

[ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.]

Digitized by Google

Self-Instruction in Foreign Languages.

FRANZ THIMM & CO.'S

NEW AND ORIGINAL SERIES OF

EUROPEAN, ORIENTAL AND CLASSICAL GRAMMARS,

after a simple, easy and practical Method, with Exercises, Reading Lessons and Dialogues, for Self-Instruction and for use in Schools and Classes, most judiciously arranged so as to insure a rapid Grammatical and Conversational knowledge of Foreign Languages.

All uniform in 8vo. size and neatly bound in Cloth.

		£	s.	d.
GERMAN GRAMMAR	by Mathias Meissner.	0	3	6
	Key to ditto, sewed	0	1	0
FRENCH GRAMMAR	by F. Ahn. "Author's" Edition	0	3	6
	Key to ditto, sewed	0	1	0
ITALIAN GRAMMAR	by G. Marchetti.	0	4	0
	Key to ditto, sewed	0	1	6
SPANISH GRAMMAR	by D. Salvo.	0	4	0
	Key to ditto, sewed	0	1	6
PORTUGUESE GRAMMAR	by L. de Cabano	0	4	0
SWEDISH GRAMMAR	by C. Lenström	0	4	0
DANISH AND NORWEGIAN GRAMMAR	by H. Lund	0	4	0
	Key to ditto, sewed	0	1	6
DUTCH GRAMMAR	by F. Ahn	0	4	0
RUSSIAN GRAMMAR	by F. Alexandrow.	0	5	0
	Key to ditto, sewed	0	2	0

[The simplest Grammar for Self-Instruction with Pronunciation. Used by Officers for the Staff College Examination in Russian.]

MODERN GREEK GRAMMAR	by A. Vlachos	0	4	0
	Key to ditto, sewed	0	1	6
TURKISH GRAMMAR	by Abu Said.	0	5	0
ARABIC GRAMMAR	by A. Hassam	0	5	0
ICELANDIC GRAMMAR	by E. Rask	0	4	0
HEBREW GRAMMAR	by S. Herzheimer.	0	4	0
	Key to ditto, sewed	0	2	0
LATIN GRAMMAR	by J. Seidenstücker	0	3	0
	Key to ditto, sewed	0	1	0

"These admirable Handbooks on Foreign Languages are too well known to need any fresh encomium."—*The Daily Telegraph*, May 4th, 1891.

"They are arranged on a new system which is simplicity itself. We recommend beginners to get these manuals with the aid of which they will make rapid progress." *The Star*, April 21, 1891.

"In addition to the Grammar, the books contain most useful dialogues and reading-lessons."—*Morning Post*, September 1, 1890.

"Will be found useful by those preparing for examinations."—*Army and Navy Gazette*, November 10, 1888.

"Grammar and the Vocabulary should go hand in hand and be taught simultaneously.—You will learn with surprising quickness and facility if you will only take the trouble to go through three months' preparatory training."—*Echoes of the Week* (G.A. Sala.)

"The Grammatical portion of the books is a well arranged and solid framework and the student may safely and comfortably set to work with his dictionaries and build up his knowledge to scholarly completeness."—*The Broad Arrow*, January 28, 1888.

"The books are arranged on an excellent plan and the typography is crisp and clear." *The Daily Chronicle*, March 18, 1891.

A new and Original System of Self-Instruction in all European, Oriental, and Classical Languages, after an Easy and Practical Method on the Simplest Principles. "FRANZ THIMM & Co.'s" Series of Grammars, Dictionaries, Commercial Correspondence, Phrase (Dialogues) and Reading Books combine Theory with Practice, and from their Simple, Easy, and judiciously arranged Method insure a rapid Grammatical and Conversational knowledge of Foreign Languages. *Catalogue Gratis.*

FRANZ THIMM & Co.,

PUBLISHERS & FOREIGN BOOKSELLERS,

PREFACE.

Professor Ahn's Method of teaching Modern Languages has received the approbation not only of Philologists, but of the Public, and it has also been most successfully adapted for the Study of the Latin language by Dr. Seidenstücker, in a work which is in general use in the German Schools and the 9th Edition of which has been employed for the present little book.

The Editor trusts that this Introduction to the Latin Grammar, which forms a part of the new Series of Grammars already published for the German, French, Italian and Spanish Languages, after the admirable System of Professor Ahn, will be welcomed by teachers and Schools as it greatly facilitates study and conducts the young learners in a pleasing and easy manner, through the Elements of Latin without their perceiving the sure and sound basis that has been laid, and the taste which it will awake for its further study.

The Editor.

INDEX.

Introductory Exercises	page 1—14
Formation of the Plural.	" 15—21
General Rules of the Masculine and Feminine Genders of the latin language	" 21
1 st Declension	" 22
II nd "	" 22
III rd "	" 23
IV th "	" 24
V th "	" 24
The Comparison of Adjectives	" 30
The Verb „esse“, to be.	" 35
Observations on the Adjective	" 40
On the Comparison of Adjectives	" 42
Observations on the Declensions	" 43
<i>Pronomina personalia</i> (Personal Pronouns)	" 48
" <i>possessiva</i> (Possessive Pronouns)	" 49
" <i>demonstrativa</i> (Demonstrative Pronouns)	" 49
" <i>interrogativa</i> (Interrogative Pronouns)	" 50
" <i>relativa</i> (Relative Pronouns)	" 50
" <i>indefinitiva</i> (Indefinite Pronouns)	" 50
Use of the Ablative	" 51
1 st Conjugation, „amare“, to love	" 56
II nd " „monere“, to remind	" 67
III rd " „tegere“, to cover	" 74
IV th " „audire“, to hear	" 81
<i>Numeralia</i> (Numerals)	" 89
Conjugation of the Verb „posse“.	" 91
The rendering of „thau“ after a Comparative	" 96
Conjugation of the Verbs „velle“, „nolle“, „malle“	" 98—100
The Prepositions	" 102—104
Conjugation of the Verb „ferre“.	" 106
The Conjunction <i>cum</i> or <i>quum</i>	" 111
<i>Deponentia</i>	" 114
Conjugation of the Verb „ferre“.	" 120
" of the imperfect Verbs „coepisse“, „memi- nisset“, „odisset“.	" 126
Conjugation of the Verb „ire“, to go	" 129

IST PART.

1.

Pater, the, a father
mater, the, a mother
frater, the, a brother

| *soror*, the, a sister
| *bonus, bona, bonum*, good.

Bonus pater. Pater bonus. Mater bona. Frater bonus.
Bona soror.

2.

est — is, it is, he is, she is.

Pater est bonus. Soror est bona. Frater est bonus.
Mater est bona. Pater bonus est. Mater bona est. Bonus
est frater.

3.

Meus, mea, meum — my, mine.

Pater meus est bonus. Bona est mater mea. Soror mea
est bona. Frater meus est bonus. Pater meus bonus. Mater
mea. Frater meus bonus.

4.

Servus, the servant
mensa, the table
scamnum, the bench

| *longus, longa, longum*, long
| *rotundus, a, um*, round.

Servus meus est bonus. Mensa mea est rotunda. Scamnum est longum. Longum scamnum est meum. Mensa rotunda est mea.

My father is good. The mother is good. The table is long. The brother is good. My good brother. My good sister. A good mother. My mother.

5.

<i>Magnus, a, um, great (large, tall)</i>		<i>profundus, a, um, deep</i>
<i>hortus, the garden</i>		<i>tuus, a, um, thy, thine.</i>
<i>aqua, the water</i>		

Aqua est profunda. Hortus est magnus. Pater tuus est bonus. Soror tua est bona. Scamnum tuum est longum. Mensa tua est rotunda. Mater mea bona.

Deep water. Thy brother is good. Thy mother is good. My good mother. My long bench. My table is round. The table is round. A round table.

6.

<i>Puer, the boy</i>		<i>venustus, a, um, pretty</i>
<i>puella, the girl</i>		<i>parvus, a, um, little.</i>

Puella est venusta. Puer est parvus. Pater meus est magnus. Mater tua est parva. Hortus meus est magnus. Mensa mea est parva. Soror mea est puella venusta. Soror tua est venusta.

Thy sister is pretty. My brother is little. Thy little brother. A pretty sister. The pretty girl. The large garden. The long bench. The round table. Thy sister is a pretty girl.

7.

— denotes a long, ˘ a short syllable.

Et, and
filius, the son
filia, the daughter
equus, the horse

curus, a, um, dear
annōna, the corn
sed, but.

Pater meus bonus est. Soror mea est bona. Equus tuus est carus. Annona est cara. Filius tuus magnus est et filia tua est venusta. Filius meus est parvus, sed filia tua magna. est

My brother is tall, but my sister is little. Thy little horse is dear, but it is good. The water is deep. The bench is long. My table is round. Thy garden is dear, but it is large.

8.

Non, not (this „*non*“ is always placed before the Verb, f. e.: is not, *non est*)
valde, very
annus, the year

annulus, the ring
baculus, the stick
curvus, a, um, crooked
purus, a, um, clean, pure.

Annus est longus. Baculus meus est curvus. Aqua est pura. Annulus est rotundus. Filia tua est valde venusta. Baculus tuus non est curvus. Annona non est cara. Hortus tuus non est magnus.

My ring is very dear. Thy brother is very good. Thy sister is very pretty. A crooked stick. Pure water. The water is pure. The garden is very dear. Thy horse is very dear.

9.

Lignum, the wood
cælum, the sky
albus, a, um, white
niger, nigra, nigrum, black

durus, a, um, hard, harsh
serēnus, a, um, serene, bright
formosus, a, um, beautiful
altus, a, um, high.

Equus tuus est albus, sed meus est niger. ~~Al~~elum est serenum. Filia tua bona est. Coelum est album. Aqua est profunda. Lignum durum. Equus meus niger est, non albus. Puer magnus non est formosus. Puella parva non est venusta. Scamnum tuum est altum.

The white horse is mine, the black one is thine. Thy wood is not hard. White wood. The deep water. The high sky. My brother is good. Thy sister is good. My horse is large and dear. A beautiful girl. A good mother. A good father. The good brother. The good sister. My mother is good. My father is very good. My horse is white, not black.

10.

Ventus, the wind
vinum, the wine
rex, the king
regina, the queen

benignus, *a, um*, gracious
justus, *a, um*, just
malus, *a, um*, bad, wicked.

Aqua bona non est vinum. Rex est justus et regina est benigna. Rex justus est, sed non durus. Mater mea non est mala, sed bona.

My brother is not wicked. The wine is good. Thy daughter is tall. My sister is a little girl. Thy brother is a tall boy. The sky is not bright. The white wine is very good.

11.

Aurum, the gold
argentum, the silver
ferrum, the iron
terra, the earth
frigidus, *a, um*, cold
olla, the pot

solus, *a, um*, alone
totus, *a, um*, all
nullus, *a, um*, none, nobody
perfectus, *a, um*, perfect
cavus, *a, um*, hollow
flavus, *a, um*, yellow.

Aurum est flavum. Nullus est perfectus. Soror tua non est perfecta. Argentum est album et ferrum est durum. Terra

est rotunda. Olla est cava. Totum coelum est serenum.
Aqua frigida. Mater mea est sola. Rex est solus.

The King is good, but the Queen is very bad. The round
pot is hollow. Gold is not silver. The water is cold. The
horse is dear. The iron is mine. The gold is very dear.

12.

Saepe, often
nunc, now
semper, always
sanus, a, um, healthy, well
aegrōtus, a, um, ill, sick
multus, a, um, much

beātus, a, um, happy
omnino, all, altogether
si, if
quando, when
homo, the man
nam, then, for.

Nullus homo omnino beatus est. Si homo aegrotus est,
non est beatus. Frater meus est homo beatus, nam semper
est sanus. Sanus homo est beatus. Mater mea est aegrota,
sed pater meus est sanus. Coelum saepe est serenum, sed
non semper. Quando homo est sanus, non est aegrotus.
Multa aqua non est sana.

My brother is not altogether well. A sick King is not
happy. The Queen is well, but the daughter is very ill. My
sister is always well. My brother is not ill. The man is
happy. My father is always ill. My father is very ill.

13.

Barba, the beard
collum, the neck
lingua, the tongue, language
humērus, the shoulder
dorsum, the back
digitus, the finger
cerēbrum, the brain
via, the road
densus, a, um, thick, dense
unus, a, um, one

deus, God
necessarius, a, um, necessary
latus, a, um, broad
invidus, a, um, envious, jealous
angustus, a, um, narrow
crassus, a, um, thick
magis, more
minus, less
magis quam, more than
minus quam, less than.

Barba tua est longa et densa; dorsum tuum est latum. Digitus meus est crassus. Est unus deus. Lingua est necessaria. Aqua est magis necessaria, quam vinum. Ventus non minus necessarius est, quam aqua. Collum tuum est album. Via est angusta. Frater tuus est homo invidus. Invidus homo est homo malus. Nullus homo invidus est bonus. Si soror tua est invida, non est bona. Digitus est longus et crassus.

My sister. Thy brain. Thy brother is not less happy, than mine. If thy mother is jealous, she is not good, for a good mother is not jealous. An envious man is not happy. My father is often ill. The language is more than necessary.

14.

Ego, I
tu, thou
amicus, the friend
etiam, also
ille, *illa*, *illud*, he, she, it,
that one

sum, I am
es, thou art
essem, if I were, I would be
esses, if thou wert, thou
wouldst be
esset, if he were, he would be.

Ille homo est amicus meus. Si tu esses amicus meus, essem beatus, sed non es meus amicus. Illa mensa est rotunda, scamnum illud est longum. Scamnum non est mensa; ferrum non est aurum. Illa puella est soror mea. Soror mea bona est puella. Puer ille saepe invidus est. Si frater meus non esset invidus, esset bonus. Bona puella non est invida, bonus puer non est invidus. Tu es amicus meus, ego sum tuus. Deus est justus et benignus et pater bonus.

My brother is a good man, for he is just and kind. If your brother were also just and kind, he would be also a good man, but he is not just. I am thy friend, for thou art good; if thou wert not good, I would not be thy friend. A long neck. A healthy brain. My shoulders. The crooked finger. The serene sky. The deep water. The bad man. The just King. The gracious Queen.

15.

Jucundus, a, um, pleasing
contentus, a, um, contented
utilis, utile, useful
victus, a, um, conquered
noster, nostra, nostrum, our
vester, vestra, vestrum, your
avarus, a, um, avaricious

lepus, the hare
pavidus, a, um, timid
historia, history
ligneus, a, um, wooden, of wood
aureus, a, um, golden, of gold.

Rex noster est bonus et justus, et regina nostra non minus est bona et justa. Si rex noster esset avarus, non esset bonus. Rex vester est victus. Mensa vestra est aurea, nostra est lignea. Vestra mensa est cara, nostra non est cara. Lepus est pavidus. Lignum est necessarium. Ego sum contentus, sed tu non es contentus; si esses contentus, esses beatus, nam homo contentus est beatus. Nullus homo est omnino contentus. Rex vester avarus victus est. Tota historia est jucunda et utilis.

Our good father is much contented. Thy brother is less contented, for he is avaricious. An avaricious man is not happy. No man is perfect. A contented King. The contented Queen. The avaricious friend. The happy brother. A just mother. I am King. The King is just. The Queen is just.

16.

Qui, quae, quod, who, which, what
pius, a, um, pious
superbus, a, um, proud
bellicōsus, a, um, warlike
iracundus, a, um, passionate
avus, the grandfather

avia, the grandmother
sincerus, a, um, sincere
probus, a, um, good, honest
mendacium, the falsehood
noxius, a, um, injurious
miles, the soldier.

Homo sum. Homo, qui sincerus est, est etiam pius. Homo superbus non est pius. Qui pius est, est amicus meus. Avia mea est proba. Miles ille est bellicosus et superbus, sed non iracundus. Mendacium est valde noxium. Avus iracundus. Mater iracunda. Mater, quae iracunda est, non est bona, nam bona mater non est iracunda. Rex noster est bel-

licosus, sed regina minus est bellicosa. Soror tua est valde amica. Mendacium non est bonum, sed valde noxium.

Our King is pious. A pious King is also just. The King, who is pious, is also just. A conquered King is timid. A warlike King is not timid. If our King were timid, he would not be warlike, for, he who is timid is not warlike. The soldier is often passionate. A proud King is not a good King. If our King were more warlike than he is, thou also wouldst now be a soldier. A proud man is not sincere.

17.

Salvus, a, um, saved
hic, haec, hoc, this one, this
certus, a, um, certain
honestus, a, um, honest, vir-
 tuous

latinus, a, um, latin
graecus, a, um, greek
antiquus, a, um, ancient
gratus, a, um, pleasant.

Hic homo est amicus meus. Haec puella est soror mea. Hoc lignum est durum. Scamnum illud longum est meum. Lingua latina est antiqua. Haec lingua est graeca. Graeca lingua est grata. Nulla lingua est magis grata, quam graeca. Hic rex est bellicosus. Haec regina est honesta. Hoc scamnum meum est. Hic homo, qui valde honestus est, est frater meus, et haec puella venusta est soror mea.

This round table is mine. This table, which is round, is mine. This bench, which is very long, is thine. The history is certain. Our language is saved. My grandfather, who is now ill, is very pious. Our pious grandmother is ill. The man, who is virtuous, is also happy. I am not less happy, than thou and thy brother. Ancient history is very pleasant.

18.

Hic leo, this lion
hic flos, this flower
hic color, this colour
hic pes, this foot

mercātor, the merchant
ruber, rubra, rubrum, red
piger, pigra, pigrum, lazy
liber, libēra, libērū, free

<i>pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum,</i>	<i>tam, so, very</i>
beautiful	<i>gratus, a, um, grateful.</i>
<i>discipulus, the pupil</i>	

Hic puer est piger discipulus; si non esset tam piger, esset amicus meus. Piger discipulus non est homo honestus. Flos, qui pulcher est, est gratus. Hic est flos pulcher. Hic est mercator. Hic mercator est honestus. Hic est mercator honestus. Color niger non est tam gratus, quam albus. Sum homo liber. Homo liber est beatus. Leo est gratus.

This pupil is my son. My son is a free man. A man, who is free, is happy. This free man is a merchant. This boy is black. A lazy boy is not free. A little foot is beautiful. A black man is not so agreeable as a white one. A great lion. The black merchant. This beautiful flower. That lazy girl.

19.

<i>Esse, to be</i>	<i>hic passer, this sparrow</i>
<i>possum, I can</i>	<i>hic carcer, this prison</i>
<i>potes, thou canst</i>	<i>hic agger, this bank, dike</i>
<i>potest, he can</i>	<i>sartor, the tailor</i>
<i>volo, I will</i>	<i>aeger, gra, grum, ill</i>
<i>vis, thou wilt</i>	<i>miser, ęra, ęrum, unhappy</i>
<i>vult, he will</i>	<i>poena, the punishment</i>
<i>debet, he must</i>	<i>laetus, a, um, glad.</i>

Qui aeger est, non est beatus. Tu potes esse beatus, si vis esse honestus. Homo honestus semper est beatus. Si vis esse meus amicus, potes esse. Noster sartor est homo miser, nam est valde aeger. Homo aeger non potest esse omnino beatus. Homo aeger non semper est miser, nam qui est honestus, semper est contentus, et qui est contentus, non est miser. Semper beatus esse possum, si volo. Carcer non est gratus. Si carcer esset gratus, non essem miser. Meus carcer est durus. Carcer est poena mea. Hic agger est latus. Si hic passer esset meus, essem puer laetus.

I am a happy man, for I am contented. A contented man is happy. This happy man is my brother. That man

is ill. A sick man is unhappy. The prison is a hard punishment. My brother is unhappy, for he is avaricious. An avaricious man is always unhappy. Thou canst be happy, if thou wilt.

20.

<i>Gaudium</i> , the pleasure, joy	<i>satis</i> , enough
<i>amicitia</i> , the friendship	<i>humānus</i> , a, um, human
<i>firmus</i> , a, um, firm	<i>quia</i> , because.
<i>vita</i> , the life	

Qui vult esse amicus meus, honestus esse debet. Bonus amicus est gaudium meum, sed quia hic amicus est aeger, ego non sum laetus, sed miser. Nostra amicitia est firma. Si non esset tam firma, non essem tam laetus et beatus. Si vis esse amicus meus, amicitia tua firma esse debet. Vita nostra misera esse potest, sed semper honesta esse debet. Vita, quae non est honesta, semper est misera. Vita humana satis est longa. Tota vita mea est misera, nam semper sum aeger.

Imprisonment is a hard punishment. Punishment must be, if man is bad. If no man were bad, punishment would not be necessary. If this boy were not so lazy, he would be a good pupil. A good pupil must not be lazy. If thou art a good pupil, I am thy friend.

21.

m. means masculinum, f. femininum, n. neutrum.

<i>Bellum</i> , n., the war	<i>sevērus</i> , a, um, severe
<i>pietas</i> , f., the piety	<i>obscurus</i> , a, um, obscure, dark
<i>veritas</i> , f., the truth	<i>verbum</i> , n., the word
<i>avis</i> , f., the bird	<i>laudandus</i> , a, um, praiseworthy
<i>laus</i> , f., the praise	<i>vituperandus</i> , a, um, blamable,
<i>fraus</i> , f., the fraud	to be blamed
<i>pax</i> , f., the peace	<i>sedūlus</i> , a, um, diligent
<i>nox</i> , f., the night	<i>malum</i> , n., the evil
<i>lex</i> , f., the law	<i>bonum</i> , n., the good
<i>nix</i> , f., the snow	<i>verus</i> , a, um, true.

Nix est alba. Nox est obscura. Nox obscura non est grata. Passer est parva avis. Veritas est laudanda, sed mendacium est vituperandum. Puer piger est vituperandus. Si semper piger esse vis, non es homo laudandus. Lex severa, si est justa, non est vituperanda. Bellum est malum, sed pax est bona. Si semper pax esset, homo esset magis beatus, quam nunc est. Verbum tuum semper est verum. Verbum nostrum debet semper esse verum. Pax est certa. Apis est sedula. Haec avis parva est pulchra. Nix est frigida. Si semper bellum esset, vita humana esset misera. Pietas tua est laudanda.

War is a great evil, but peace is a great blessing (good). If it were always peace, our life would be happier, than it is now. This boy can be very happy, if he will, but he will not; he is lazy. Thy life would be happy, if thou wert pious and virtuous. Thy pious life is my joy. Thy word is a severe law. This law is severe, but it is just. A just law must be severe. If a law is not just, it is to be blamed. This entire law is just.

22.

Possem, I could, would, might
posses, thou couldst, wouldst,
 mightst
posset, he could
vellem, I wished, liked
velles, thou wishedst
vellet, he wished
ipse, ipsa, ipsum, himself, her-
 self, itself
causa, f., the cause
autem, but
neque or *nec*, and not

<i>neque — neque</i>	} neither, nor
<i>nec — nec</i>	
<i>utinam</i> , would that, would to	
God that	
<i>aeternus</i> , a, um, eternal	
<i>enim</i> , for, then	
<i>amplius</i> , more, further	
<i>vox</i> , f., the voice	
<i>luna</i> , f., the moon	
<i>adsum</i> , I am here	
<i>ades</i> , thou art here	
<i>adest</i> , he, she, it is here	
<i>dominus</i> , m., the master.	

Semper homo beatus esse posset, si vellet; si non est, ipse est causa. Tu non vis esse beatus, nam semper es piger. Piger autem discipulus non potest esse beatus. Coelum neque omnino obscurum, neque omnino serenum est. Utinam pax esset aeterna! Si enim esset pax aeterna, bellum, magnum

illud malum, non amplius esset. Rex bellicosus non est laudandus; si autem bellum est necessarium, bellum ipsum non est vituperandum. Vox humana est grata. Vox tua est magis grata, quam mea. Quando luna non adest, nox est obscura. Haec nox est obscura.

My master is kind and just. I am the servant. A servant must be diligent. A diligent servant is praiseworthy, a lazy one is to be blamed. No truth is to be blamed. Falsehood is always blamable. My word is the truth. Our garden is neither large nor small. The moon is not so great, as the earth. The sky is high. The water is deep. The bee is diligent. This bird is small. This praise is blamable. Our King is to be praised. The eternal peace. When my master is here, I am also here.

23.

Utilis, utilis, utile, useful
lenis, lenis, lene, mild
fortis, fortis, forte, strong,
 brave
omnis, nis, ne, every one
mortalis, lis, le, mortal
animal, n., the animal
ergo, therefore

mulier, f., the woman
vir, m., the man
debëo, I must
debes, thou must
aeque — ac } as — as
aeque — atque }
otium, n., idleness.

Omnis homo est mortalis. Haec puella est mortalis. Hic servus est mortalis. Filius meus est mortalis. Filia mea est mortalis. Hoc animal est mortale. Haec lex est lenis. Rex noster est lenis. Omnis rex lenis esse debet. Omne animal est mortale. Homo est animal mortale. Ego sum homo, ergo sum mortalis. Si tu es homo, es etiam mortalis. Miles esse debet fortis. Haec mulier non minus fortis est, quam vir. Vir honestus et fortis esse debet. Si miles esse vis, fortis esse debes; nam omnis miles fortis esse debet. Regina nostra aeque est fortis, ac rex noster. Omne animal est utile. Historia est utilis. Hortus est utilis. Scamnum est utile.

Every animal is useful. Every animal is mortal. Man, who is mortal, is also eternal. My brother is a valiant soldier.

My sister is as brave as my brother. Idleness is dangerous. Our friendship must be strong. If thou wilt be my friend, I am content. God is a kind and merciful (mild) father.

24.

Admirabilis, lis, le, wonderful
brevis, is, e, short
crudelis, is, e, cruel
difficilis, is, e, difficult
dulcis, is, e, sweet
fidelis, is, e, faithful
liberalis, is, e, liberal

pinguis, is, e, fat
sublimis, is, e, high
nimis, too much, too
mundus, m., the world
initium, n., the beginning
amīca, f., the female friend.

Mundus est pulcher et admirabilis. Vita humana brevis est. Hoc gaudium breve est. Lingua latina non tam difficilis est, quam graeca. Omne initium est difficile. Hoc animal nimis est pingue. Rex noster est liberalis. Luna est sublimis. Frater meus fidelis est. Homo fidelis est laudandus. Homo, qui non est fidelis, non est honestus. Si tu magis esses fidelis, quam es, amicus meus esse posses. Sed non es fidelis; mendacium est gaudium tuum.

This table is round, and that bench is short. The sky is clear, and the moon is white. If the moon is not present, the night is dark. A dark night is not agreeable. The night is not my friend (fem.). When it is night, the sky is dark. The night must be dark, if the moon is not present. My sister is a faithful girl. If every man were faithful, the human life would be very agreeable.

25.

Totus, a, um, the whole,
 entire, all
populus, m., the people
hilaris, is, e, joyous, cheerful
tristis, is, e, sad
alter, tēra, tērum { the other
 the second

fertilis, is, e, fertile
sterilis, is, e, barren
ubique, everywhere
vivēre, to live
aliēnus, a, um { strange
 foreign.

Non omne animal est crudele. Hoc animal non est tam crudele, quam ille homo, qui est valde crudelis. Si rex noster crudelis esset, totus populus miser esset, qui nunc est satis beatus. Hic puer est crudelis, haec puella est crudelis, hoc animal est crudele. Omne animal crudele est noxium. Ego sum hilaris, sed frater meus semper est tristis. Ego non possum hilaris esse, nam sum amicus tuus. Si enim amicus tristis est, alter hilaris esse non potest.

The whole earth is not fertile. This soil is fertile, that one is barren. If the entire earth were fertile, men could be, and live every where. Human life is often very sad and miserable. If a man is miserable, he himself is not always the cause, a strange fraud (incontrolable accident) is often the cause.

26.

Merito, justly, by right
laudāre, to praise
laudari, to be praised
nemo, c., nobody

felix, happy
sapiens, wise, intelligent
dives, rich
pauper, poor.

Non omnis laus est laudanda. Qui vult merito laudari, omnino laudandus esse debet. Omnis homo honestus merito est laudandus. Si omnis homo laudandus esset, vita humana beata esset, nam nemo esset malus neque noxius. Malus homo non potest esse felix. Mater mea honesta est et felix. Hoc animal non est felix. Frater felix. Soror felix. Animal felix. Puer piger non est felix, nec puella pigra est felix. Nemo, qui piger est, felix esse potest. Puer sapiens non est piger, nam si piger esset, non esset sapiens. Utinam omnis puer esset sapiens!

The good man is always happy. If a son is wise, the father is pleased. Every son could be wise, if he liked. Every intelligent boy and every intelligent girl is my pleasure. The rich girl is not always a good girl. He who is rich, can and must be liberal. The poor cannot be liberal. He who will be liberal, must not be poor.

27.

Formation of the Plural.

Servus, m. — pl. *servi*, the servant

hortus, m. — pl. *horti*, the garden

populus, m. — pl. *populi*, the people

mensa, f. — pl. *mensae*, the table

amica, f. — pl. *amicae*, the female friend

regina, f. — pl. *reginae*, the queen

scamnum, n. — pl. *scamna*, the bench

vinum, n. — pl. *vina*, the wine

mendacium, n. — pl. *mendacia*, the falsehood

collum, n. — pl. *colla*, the neck

pater, m. — pl. *patres*, the father

mater, f. — pl. *matres*, the mother

frater, m. — pl. *fratres*, the brother

soror, f. — pl. *sorores*, the sister

homo, m. — pl. *homines*, the man

bonus, a, um, }
Pl. *boni*, *bonae*, *bona*, } good

magnus, a, um, }
Pl. *magni*, *ae*, *a*, } great

altus, a, um, }
Pl. *alti*, *ae*, *a*, } high

piger, *gra*, *grum*, }
Pl. *pigri*, *ae*, *a*, } lazy

rotundus, a, um, }
Pl. *rotundi*, *ae*, *a*, } round

mortalis, *is*, *e*, }
Pl. *mortales*, *es*, *ia*, } mortal

lenis, *is*, *e*, }
Pl. *lenes*, *es*, *ia*, } mild

sumus, we are

estis, you are

sunt, they are

plerumque, commonly, usually

igitur, therefore.

Observ. It is to be remembered that one Vowel immediately before another is generally short, in „otium“ therefore the syllable „ti“ is short, the mark for the quantity (the length or shortness of a syllable) will therefore in future be left out in similar instances.

Non omnes servi sunt boni. Boni servi sunt laudandi. Bonus servus est laudandus. Frater meus bonus est servus; fratres mei boni sunt servi. Non omnes matres sunt bonae, nec omnes patres boni. Fratres mei sunt honesti. Multa scamna sunt longa. Multae mensae sunt rotundae. Multi homines sunt beati. Non omnes equi albi sunt, multi etiam sunt rufi et nigri. Albi equi aequae boni sunt, ac nigri.

Fathers are often too severe, but mothers are usually too mild. If every mother were as severe as the father, the son

would often be happy. My sons are good, I am therefore pleased and happy. Nobody is quite happy. If all men are happy, I am also happy.

28.

<i>Felix, felix, felix,</i>	} happy	<i>humanus, a, um,</i>	} humanly
Pl. <i>felices, felices, felicia,</i>		Pl. <i>humani, ae, a,</i>	
<i>miser, �ra, �rum,</i>	} unhappy	<i>durus, a, um,</i>	} hard
Pl. <i>miseri, ae, a,</i>		Pl. <i>duri, ae, a,</i>	
<i>honestus, a, um,</i>	} honest	<i>bonus, a, um,</i>	} good
Pl. <i>honesti, ae, a,</i>		Pl. <i>boni, ae, a,</i>	
<i>meus, a, um,</i>	} my, mine	<i>fertilis, is, e,</i>	} fertile
Pl. <i>mei, ae, a,</i>		Pl. <i>fertiles, es, ia,</i>	
<i>hic, haec, hoc,</i>	} this one	<i>ter, three times</i>	
Pl. <i>hi, hae, haec,</i>		<i>nos, we</i>	
<i>ille, illa, illud,</i>	} that one	<i>vos, you</i>	
Pl. <i>illi, illae, illa,</i>		<i>poss�mus, we can</i>	
<i>qui, quae, quod,</i>	} which	<i>potestis, you can</i>	
Pl. <i>qui, quae, quae,</i>		<i>possunt, they can</i>	
<i>ipse, ipsa, ipsum,</i>	} himself	<i>vol�mus, we want</i>	
Pl. <i>ipsi, ae, a,</i>		<i>vultis, you want</i>	
<i>omnis, is, e,</i>	} every one	<i>volunt, they want</i>	
Pl. <i>omnes, es, omnia,</i>		<i>parens, m. f., the father, the</i>	
<i>sapiens,</i>	} wise	<i>mother</i>	
Pl. <i>sapientes, es, ia,</i>		<i>parentes, m., the parents.</i>	
<i>crud�lis, is, e,</i>	} cruel		
Pl. <i>crudeles, es, ia,</i>			

Ter beati sunt illi homines, qui sunt pii et honesti. Omnes honesti homines sunt laudandi, sed mali vituperandi. Mali homines sunt miseri. Homines boni sunt felices. Hi homines sunt felices, illi sunt miseri. Nos omnes mortales sumus. Omnes, qui homines sunt, sunt etiam mortales. Deus non est mortalis. Omnes homines felices esse possunt, si volunt. Parentes sunt felices, si filii sunt boni. Filii mei sunt gaudium meum. Multae puellae sunt venustae; non omnes puellae venustae sunt honestae. Sorores meae sunt bonae, et fratres mei non minus sunt boni. Deus ubique est, sed homines non possunt esse ubique.

All queens are not happy, many are very unhappy. If sons are bad and lazy, parents cannot be happy and joyful. All wars are injurious. No war is useful. If every war were useful, a warlike king would always be praiseworthy. The man who wishes to be praised, must be good. All good men are to be praised, all bad ones are to be blamed.

29.

Rex, m. — Pl. *reges*, the King

potens

Pl. *potentes*, *es, ia*, } powerful

essēmus, we were

essētis, you were

essent, they were

vellēmus, we wished

vellētis, you wished

vellent, they wished

dummōdo, if only

possēmus, we could

possētis, you could

possent, they could

amāre, to love

amāri, to be loved

miles, m. — Pl. *milites*, the soldier

dux, m. — Pl. *duces*, the general

diu, long

sobrius, *a, um*, }

Pl. *sobrii*, *ae, a*, } temperate

debēmus, we must, ought

debētis, you must

debent, they must

quidem, indeed

sanus, *a, um*, }

Pl. *sani*, *ae, a*, } healthy

expetendus, *a, um*, }

Pl. *expetendi*, *ae, a*, } desirable

utinam, that there should be!

Multi reges valde sunt potentes; omnes hi reges felices esse possent, dummodo vellent; sed multi non volunt tam felices esse, quam esse possent. Si hi reges sapientes essent, populi essent felices, qui nunc saepe valde sunt miseri. Utinam omnes reges sapientes et omnes populi felices essent! Rex, qui amari vult, justus et benignus esse debet. Reges, qui amari volunt, iusti et benigni esse debent. Si omnes reges essent iusti, bella non essent, quae nunc sunt multa. Omnia bella sunt crudelia. Bella minus crudelia esse possent, si milites, qui saepe crudeles sunt, magis humani essent. Saepe duces ipsi crudeles sunt.

Those men, who wish to live long, must be temperate. Many people wish indeed to live long, but they cannot be temperate; if they could be temperate, they would also live long. A long life is agreeable, if we are always healthy. If a

man is always ill, a long life is not desirable. If you wish to live long, you must be temperate. My brothers are temperate. All men might be temperate if they wished. Would that all men were temperate!

30.

Aequē — *atque*, as well — as
flos, m. — Pl. *flores*, the flower
pulcher, *chra*, *chrum*, } beautiful
 Pl. *pulchri*, *ae*, *a*, }
negotium, n. — Pl. *negotia*,
 the business

tamen, yet
cultus, *a*, *um*, } cultivated
 Pl. *culti*, *ae*, *a*, }
ager, m. — Pl. *agri*, the land
meus, *a*, *um*, mine
cum, when.

Hortus meus magnus est, sed tui horti, qui multi sunt, omnes sunt parvi. Parvi horti non sunt tam cari, quam magni, si hi magni aequē sunt boni atque illi parvi. Horti mei magis sunt cari, quam tui. Hi horti fertiles sunt, illi sunt steriles. Horti steriles non sunt tam cari, quam fertiles. Milites sunt necessarii, cum bellum est. Si milites non essent, bella esse non possent. Milites non semper sunt sobrii. Si semper essent sobrii, non essent tam crudeles, quam saepe sunt. Patres boni. Matres bonae. Bella mala. Flos pulcher, flores pulchri. Collum longum, colla longa. Homo piger, homines pigri. Miles magnus, milites magni. Bellum crudele, bella crudelia. Scamnum longum, scamna longa. Puella sana, puellae sanae. Puer felix, pueri felices. Negotium felix, negotia felicia.

Many lands are barren, and yet cultivated. Our lands are cultivated and fruitful. An unfruitful land is not so dear as a fruitful one. Barren lands are not so dear as fruitful ones. All my lands are fruitful. If they were not fruitful, I should not be so pleased as I am now. Your lands are more fruitful than mine. These flowers are beautiful. Beautiful flowers are dear.

31.

Fieri, to become
legere, to read

scribere, to write
vir, m., the man

virī, the men
doctus, a, um, } learned
docti, ae, a, }
discere, to learn
quamquam, though, although
jam, already
melius, better, in a better
 manner
senex, the old man
senes, old men
praeceptor, m., the master,
 teacher

praeceptores, the masters
docere, to teach
nolunt, they will not
is, ea, id, he who, she, it who
ii, eae, ea, those who
bene, well
docet, he teaches
docent, they teach
honorare, to honour
honorari, to be honoured
animal, n. } the animal.
animalia, }

Qui vir doctus fieri vult, legere et scribere debet. Non omnes, qui legere et scribere possunt, sunt viri docti. Si doctus vir fieri vis, discere debes. Homo, quamquam jam est doctus, tamen discere debet. Omnes homines discere debent. Pueri melius discere possunt, quam senes. Pueri discere debent, praeceptores docere. Qui docere nolunt, non possunt esse praeceptores. Is est bonus praeceptor, qui bene et fideliter docet. Qui bene et fideliter docent, boni sunt praeceptores. Qui non bene docet, non est bonus praeceptor. Praeceptor, qui laudari vult, fideliter docere et bene vivere debet.

This old man is miserable. Many old men are happy. Good old men must be honoured. All men who wish to become old men, must be temperate. A temperate life is praiseworthy. Would that all men were temperate! Every man may be temperate if he likes. My friend is temperate. All my friends are temperate. Many animals are more temperate than man.

32.

Longus, a, um, long
longior, ior, longius, longer
 Pl. *longiores, res, longiora*
doctus, a, um, learned
doctior, ior, ius, more learned
 Pl. *doctiores, res, ra*
lenis, is, e, mild

lenior, ior, ius, milder
 Pl. *leniores, res, ra*
tristis, sad
tristior, ior, ius, more sad
 Pl. *tristiores, res, ra*
sapiens, wise
sapientior, ior, ius, wiser

Pl. *sapientiōres*, *res*, *ra*
felix, happy
felicior, *ior*, *ius*, more happy
 Pl. *feliciōres*, *res*, *ra*
audax, bold
audacior, *ior*, *ius*, bolder
 Pl. *audaciores*, *res*, *ra*
locūples, rich
locupletior, *ior*, *ius*, richer
 Pl. *locupletiōres*, *res*, *ra*
quamquam, although
alius, *a*, *ud*, the other, that
 other
erit, will be
infelix, unhappy
exitus, *m.*, the result
soleo, I am accustomed, I am
 wont

soles, thou art wont
solet, he, she, it is wont
solēmus, we are wont
solētis, you are wont
solent, they are wont
latus, *a*, *um*, broad
latis, *ior*, *ius*, broader
fur, *m.*, the thief
fures, the thieves
latro, *m.*, the robber
latrōnes, the robbers
ubique, every where
paucus, *a*, *um*, little
 Pl. *pauci*, *ae*, *a*
justitia, *f.*, justice
severitas, *f.*, the punishment
ubi, where
ibi, there.

Frater meus doctus est, sed vester doctior est. Fratres vestri doctiores sunt, quam mei, quamquam etiam hi satis sunt docti. Miles audax esse debet, sed non omnes milites audaces sunt. Tu es audacior, quam ego, quamquam ego audacior sum, quam multi alii. Qui audaces sunt, non semper sunt sapientes. Duces sapientiores esse debent, quam milites. Si duces sapientiores sunt, quam milites, bellum erit plerumque felix, sed si hi sunt sapientiores quam illi, exitus infelix esse solet. Scamnum longius esse solet, quam mensa, sed mensa est latior. Rex vester est senior, quam regina vestra, quae valde est severa. Si rex esset severior, boni homines essent feliciores et locupletiores; nam nunc ubique sunt fures et latrones.

Many animals indeed are cruel, but few are more cruel than many a robber. Robbers are bad men. If your King were as severe as he is kind there would not be so many robbers and thieves. Justice must be severe, where there is no severity, there is also no justice.

33.

Possim, I could, might
possis, thou couldst
possit, he could
possimus, we could
possitis, you could
possint, they could
ut, that
societas, f., society
miser, misera, miserum, un-
 happy, miserable

miserior, ior, ius, more un-
 happy
 Pl. *miseriōres, res, ra*
et — et, as well as
generōsus, a, um, generous,
 magnanimous
periculōsus, a, um, dangerous
mitis, is, e, soft, gentle
tigris, m. f., the tiger
tigres, the tigers.

Nemo tam doctus est, ut doctior esse non possit; neque tam locuples, ut locupletior esse non possit. Homines locuplēs saepe sunt miseriōres, quam paupēs. Si omnes homines tam locuplēs essent, quam multi sunt, societas humana non esset tam felix, quam nunc est. Vos non estis tam docti, ut doctiores esse non possitis. Omnes homines sunt mortales, et locuplēs et paupēs. Homines paupēs saepe sunt beatiōres, quam locuplēs. Ii soli beati sunt, qui sunt honesti. Si igitur reges non sunt honesti, beati esse non possunt. Mater tua est severior, quam mea, quae valde est lenis.

The lion is a magnanimous animal. Lions are magnanimous. The lion is a strong animal. He is stronger than many other animals. If the lion were as cruel as he is strong, he would be a dangerous animal. Now he is less dangerous. The lion is more gentle than the tiger. The tiger is more cruel than many other animals.

General Rules of the Masculine and Feminine Genders of the latin language.

1. Masculine:

All men, people, rivers, winds and months.

2. Feminine:

All women, trees, towns, countries and islands.

Ist Declension.

Most words of the Ist declension end in *a*.

Singular.	Plural.
Nom. <i>mensā</i> , the table	<i>mensae</i> , the tables
Gen. <i>mensae</i> , of the table	<i>mensarum</i> , of the tables
Dat. <i>mensae</i> , to the table	<i>mensis</i> , to the tables
Accus. <i>mensam</i> , the table	<i>mensas</i> , the tables
Vocativ. <i>mensā</i> , o table	<i>mensae</i> , o tables
Ablativ. <i>mensā</i> , by or with the table.	<i>mensis</i> , by the tables.

Rule. Words terminating in „*a*“ are feminine.

Decline: *tabula*, the table; *barba*, the beard.

IInd Declension.

Most words of the 2nd Declension end in: *er*, *us*, *um*.
Those of „*us*“ take „*e*“ in the Vocative.

a. Words terminating in „*us*“.

Singular.	Plural.
N. <i>servus</i> , the servant	<i>servi</i> , the servants
G. <i>servi</i> , of the servant	<i>servōrum</i> , of the servants
D. <i>servo</i> , to the servant	<i>servis</i> , to the servants
A. <i>servum</i> , the servant	<i>servos</i> , the servants
V. <i>serve</i> , o servant	<i>servi</i> , o servants
A. <i>servo</i> , by the servant.	<i>servis</i> , by the servants.

b. Words terminating in „*er*“.

Singular.	Plural.
N. <i>liber</i> , the book	<i>libri</i> , the books
G. <i>libri</i> , of the book	<i>librōrum</i> , of the books
D. <i>libro</i> , to the book	<i>libris</i> , to the books
A. <i>librum</i> , the book	<i>libros</i> , the books
V. <i>liber</i> , o book	<i>libri</i> , o books
A. <i>libro</i> , by the book.	<i>libris</i> , by the books.

c. Words terminating in „um“.

Singular.	Plural.
N. <i>scamnum</i> , the bench	<i>scamna</i> , the benches
G. <i>scamni</i> , of the bench	<i>scamnōrum</i> , of the benches
D. <i>scamno</i> , to the bench	<i>scamnis</i> , to the benches
A. <i>scamnum</i> , the bench	<i>scamna</i> , the benches
V. <i>scamnum</i> , o bench	<i>scamna</i> , o benches
A. <i>scamno</i> , by the bench.	<i>scamnis</i> , by the benches.

Rule. Words in „*er*, *ir*, *ur*, *us*“ are Masculine,
in „*um*“ are Neuter.

IIIrd Declension.

The Words of the 3rd Declension may end either with a Consonant: *c*, *l*, *n*, *r*, *s*, *t*, *x*, or with a Vowel: *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *y*.

Singular.	Plural.
N. <i>pater</i> , the father	<i>patres</i> , the fathers
G. <i>patris</i> , of the father	<i>patrum</i> , of the fathers
D. <i>patri</i> , to the father	<i>patribus</i> , to the fathers
A. <i>patrem</i> , the father	<i>patres</i> , the fathers
V. <i>pater</i> , o father	<i>patres</i> , o fathers
A. <i>patre</i> , by the father.	<i>patribus</i> , by the fathers.

Singular.	Plural.
N. <i>flos</i> , the flower	<i>flores</i> , the flowers
G. <i>floris</i> , of the flower	<i>florum</i> , of the flowers
D. <i>flori</i> , to the flower	<i>floribus</i> , to the flowers
A. <i>florem</i> , the flower	<i>flores</i> , the flowers
V. <i>flos</i> , o flower	<i>flores</i> , o flowers
A. <i>flore</i> , by the flower.	<i>floribus</i> , by the flowers.

Singular.	Plural.
N. <i>nomen</i> , the name	<i>nomina</i> , the names
G. <i>nominis</i> , of the name	<i>nominum</i> , of the names
D. <i>nomini</i> , to the name	<i>nominibus</i> , to the names
A. <i>nomen</i> , the name	<i>nomina</i> , the names
V. <i>nomen</i> , o name	<i>nomina</i> , o names
A. <i>nomine</i> , by the name.	<i>nominibus</i> , by the names.

Rule of the Genders of the third Declension.

Masculine: those ending in *o*, *or*, *os*, *er*.

Feminine: those in *us*, *aus*, *is*, *x*, and *ys*.

Neuter: those in *c*, *l*, *n*, *t*, *ar*, *ur*, *us*, *a*, and *e*.

IVth Declension.

The words of the 4th Declension end either in *us* or *u*.

Singular.	Plural.
N. <i>fructus</i> , the fruit	<i>fructūs</i> , the fruits
G. <i>fructūs</i> , of the fruit	<i>fructūum</i> , of the fruits
D. <i>fructui</i> , to the fruit	<i>fructibus</i> , to the fruits
A. <i>fructum</i> , the fruit	<i>fructūs</i> , the fruits
V. <i>fructus</i> , o fruit	<i>fructūs</i> , o fruits
A. <i>fructū</i> , by the fruit.	<i>fructibus</i> , by the fruits.

Singular.	Plural.
N. <i>cornū</i> , the horn	<i>cornūa</i> , the horns
G. <i>cornu</i> , of the horn	<i>cornūum</i> , of the horns
D. <i>cornu</i> , to the horn	<i>cornibus</i> , to the horns
A. <i>cornu</i> , the horn	<i>cornūa</i> , the horns
V. <i>cornu</i> , o horn	<i>cornūa</i> , o horns
A. <i>cornu</i> , by the horn.	<i>cornibus</i> , by the horns.

Rule of the Genders of the 4th Declension.

Masculine: those ending in *us*.

Neuter *s* *s* *s* *u*.

Vth Declension.

The words of the 5th Declension end in *es*.

Singular.	Plural.
N. <i>dies</i> , the day	<i>dies</i> , the days
G. <i>diēi</i> , of the day	<i>diērum</i> , of the days
D. <i>diēi</i> , to the day	<i>diēbus</i> , to the days
A. <i>diem</i> , the day	<i>dies</i> , the days
V. <i>dies</i> , o day	<i>dies</i> , o days
A. <i>die</i> , by the day.	<i>diebus</i> , by the days.

Rule of the Gender. The words of the 5th Declension ending in *es* are feminine.

34.

Hic, haec, hoc, this one
G. hujus, of this one

negotium, ii, n., the business
vulnus, n̄ris, n., the wound
corpus, p̄ris, n., the body
onus, on̄ris, n., the burden
mare, ris, n., the sea
beneficium, ii, n., good action
quia, because
diligens,
G. diligentis,
Pl. diligentes, es, ia, } diligent

Plural.

hi, hae, haec, these ones
horum, harum, horum, of these ones

caput, p̄tis, n., the head
summus, a, um, highest, the highest
pars, partis, f., the part
globus, a, um, round
conjux, ūgis, f. { the consort
 { the wife
maritus, i, m., the husband
optimus, a, um, the best.

Patris hujus filius bonus est. Filiae hujus patris sunt pulchrae. Omnes hujus terrae homines sunt mortales. Horti hujus hominis sunt magni. Negotia horum virorum sunt difficilia. Multa hujus hominis negotia sunt periculosa. Beneficia Dei nostri sunt magna. Servorum horum dominus severus est, quia servi sunt pigri. Dominus pigrorum servorum severus esse debet. Si servi boni sunt et diligentes, domini lenes esse possunt. Rex hujus populi est justus. Reges horum populorum sunt justi. Milites hujus regis crudeles sunt, sed audaces et fortes. Pater hujus pueri vir est doctus et honestus. Flores hujus horti pulchriores sunt, quam hortorum tuorum. Duces militum fortes et sapientes esse debent. Amici mei pietas est laudanda. Mors patris tui est certa. Caput est summa pars corporis hominis. Aqua hujus maris nigra est. Hoc mare nigrum est. Aqua hujus maris nigri est frigida. Haec aqua pars est maris.

The son of this man is more learned than I. The head of the man is round. The garden of my master is large. The gardens of my father are dear. The sons of our King are bold. The Queen is the consort of the King. The King is the consort of the Queen. The word of the King is just. A King must be just. A just King is the best. The daughter of the King is beautiful.

35.

Pecunia, *ae*, f., the money
liberi, *orum*, m., the children
nimis, too, very
nimis multus, *a*, *um*, too much
pestis, *is*, f., the ruin
raro, rare
vitium, *ii*, n. { the fault
 { the vice
repetitio, *iōnis*, f., the re-
 petition
studium, *ii*, n., the study
primus, *a*, *um*, the first
classis, *is*, f., the class
schola, *ae*, f., the school
utinam, that but

qui, *quae*, *quod*, which, who
G. cujus, of which, whose
Pl. qui, *quae*, *quae*
G. quorum, *quarum*, *quorum*
brevis, *is*, *e*, short
brevior, *ior*, *ius*, shortest
longus, *a*, *um*, long
longior, *ior*, *ius*, longer
felix,
Pl. felices, *es*, *ia*, } happy
lenis, *is*, *e*,
Pl. lenes, *es*, *ia*, } mild
videtur, it appears
esse, to be.

Virorum doctorum filii raro sunt aequae diligentes ac patres. Parentum pecunia plerumque pestis est liberorum. Liberi hujus patris diligentes sunt et probi. Probi liberi gaudium sunt parentum. Multi filii non sunt tam boni, quam parentes. Pecunia est pueri hujus pestis. Pecunia nimis multa saepe est noxia. Otium est vitii initium. Repetitio est mater studiorum. Frater meus discipulus est primae classis. Frater meus primus est omnium discipulorum hujus scholae. Praeceptor fratris mei vir est doctus. Pater, cujus filii diligentes sunt, beatus est. Mater, cujus filiae sunt honestae, beata est. Parentes, quorum liberi sunt probi et honesti, hilares et contenti esse possunt. Si liberi omnium parentum diligentes essent et boni, omnes parentes hilares esse possent. Hominum gaudia sunt brevia.

The life of a horse is shorter than the life of a man. Human life is short. The life of an unfortunate man appears to be longer than the life of a happy man. Happy are the parents, whose children are good. Oh! that all men were but happy! Happy is the King, whose people are happy. That is a happy father, whose children are good. Every man is mortal. Our school is good. Those children are diligent. My brothers are more diligent than thine.

36.

Videntur, they appear
plus,
 Pl. *plures*, *res*, *ra*, } more
re vera, in truth
pretiosus, *a*, *um*, costly
pretiosior, *ior*, *ius*, more costly
melior, *ior*, *ius*,
 Pl. *meliores*, *res*, *ra*, } better
diligentia, *ae*, *f*. { the care
 { the industry
turpis, *is*, *e*, vicious, bad
opprobrium, *ii*, *n.*, the disgrace

talīs, *is*, *e*, such
perire, to be lost
fons, *tis*, *m*. { the source
 { the spring
perennis, *is*, *e*, inexhaustable
lucrum, *i*, *n.*, the profit, gain
dives
 Pl. *divites*, *tes*, *tia*, } rich
facile, easy
reddere, to do, to make
reddi, to be done, made.

Multi homines felices esse videntur, qui miseri sunt. Si omnes homines felices essent, qui esse videntur, plures essent felices, quam re vera sunt. Aurum est pretiosum. Aurum pretiosius est quam argentum. Otium puerorum periculosum est. Pueri diligentes esse debent. Si pueri semper essent diligentes, parentum essent gaudium. Parentes severi meliores sunt, quam lenes. Liberi, quorum parentes sunt nimis lenes, raro sunt boni. Boni sunt pueri, quorum diligentia est laudanda. Puer, cujus diligentia est laudanda, parentum est gaudium. Pueri, quorum diligentia est magna, boni sunt discipuli. Is est bonus discipulus, qui semper est diligens. Praeceptor, cujus discipuli semper sunt diligentes, beatus est. Discipuli discere debent, docere praeceptores.

The father whose son is good and virtuous, is a happy father, but he is unhappy, if the son is vicious. A bad son is the disgrace of the parents. All the sons of good parents are not good, but all sons of such parents might be good, if they liked. The sons of poor parents are often better than the sons of rich parents. Money is often the ruin of rich boys. The man whose highest good is much money, is a miserable man. Industry is better than money. Money may be lost, but industry is an inexhaustable source of gain. He who is diligent is always rich enough, the rich can easily become poor.

37.

Edere, to eat
bibere, to drink
nolunt, they will not
corruptus, *a*, *um*, corrupt
cervus, *i*, *m.*, the stag
stomachus, *i*, *m.*, the stomach
velox,
Pl. veloces, *ces*, *cia*, } swift
velociter, swiftly
velocius, swifter
currere, to run
multo, much, for much
corvus, *i*, *m.* the raven
volare, to fly
quoque, also
dicitur, it is said
dicuntur, they are said

diutius, longer
bipes, } two-
Pl. bipedes, *des*, *dia*, } legged.
struthiocamelus, *i*, *m.*, the
 ostrich
penna, *ae*, *f.*, the feather
ornamentum, *i*, *n.*, the orna-
 ment
mulier, *mulieris*, the woman
ala, *ae*, *f.*, the wing
alius, the one, the other
alii, the ones, the others
satis, enough
columba, *ae*, *f.*, the dove
passer, *passeris*, *m.*, the
 sparrow.

<i>Observ.</i>	The Nominative answers to the question : who ?				
The Genitive	=	=	=	=	whose ?
The Dative	=	=	=	=	to whom ?
The Accusative	=	=	=	=	whom ?

Omnis homo, qui vivere vult, edere et bibere debet. Omnes homines, qui vivere volunt, edere et bibere debent. Qui edere et bibere nolunt, vivere non possunt. Is, cujus stomachus corruptus est, non potest diu vivere. Cervus est animal velox. Cervi velociter currere possunt. Cervi non sunt aequae fortes ac veloces. Leones multo sunt fortiores, quam cervi. Corvus est avis nigra. Aves volare possunt. Si omnes aves volare possunt, corvus quoque volare potest. Corvus diu vivere dicitur. Corvi multo diutius vivere dicuntur, quam homines. Avis est animal bipes. Omnes aves sunt bipedes. Non omne animal, quod est bipes, est avis, nam homo quoque bipes est. Struthiocamelus est avis, quae melius currere quam volare potest. Pennae hujus avis sunt pretiosae et ornamentum mulierum. Struthiocamelus altior est quam equus.

The feathers of the ostrich are beautiful and expensive (dear). The ostrich is a large bird, which can run swifter than it can fly. The wings of the ostrich are short, therefore

the ostrich cannot fly swiftly. All birds can fly, but some can fly more swiftly than others. The dove is a small bird, and it can fly swiftly enough. Many small birds can fly more swiftly than many large ones. The sparrow is a small bird, which can fly swiftly.

38.

Is, ea, id, he who, that which
ii, eae, ea, those
ejus, of him
eōrum, eārum, eōrum, of those
scriptus, a, um, written
legendus, a, um, readable, to
 read
inutilis, is, e, unnecessary

liber, bri, m., the book
sententia, ae, f., the opinion
auctor, ōris, m., the author
illustris, is, e, celebrated
quoque, also, however
mos, mōris, the moral, manner
lascivus, a, um, mischievous
exemplum, i, n., the example.

Multi libri sunt inutiles. Ii libri sunt legendi, qui sunt utiles. Si liber non utilis est, non est legendus. Libri, quorum sententiae noxae esse dicuntur, non sunt legendi. Omnes libri patris mei sunt legendi, nam boni sunt et utiles. Hic liber utilis esse dicitur. Pater meus auctor est hujus libri. Auctores librorum noxiorum vituperandi sunt, sed librorum utilium auctores sunt laudandi. Alii libri sunt utiliores, quam alii. Libri Virgilii bene scripti et valde utiles sunt. Hi libri sunt mei, illi sunt tui. Nullus librorum meorum noxius est, sed omnes sunt utiles. Libri bonorum auctorum sunt quidem plerumque utiles, sed non semper. Hujus libri auctor vir probus et honestus est. Auctor horum librorum homo est obscurus. Non omnis liber, cujus auctor illustris est, ipse quoque est bonus et laudandus.

Men whose morals are bad, cannot and must not be praised; but those are to be praised, whose morals are good. The manners of a boy must be good. If the manners of the boys were always good, many parents would be more happy than they are now. Many boys are very mischievous. If my son were mischievous he would not be my joy. The diligence of the children is the joy of the parents. All the children of good parents are not good, but the children of bad parents

are often good; a bad example is therefore not always dangerous.

39.

The Comparisen of Adjectives.

Honestus, *a*, *um*, honest, virtuous
honestior, *ior*, *ius*, more honest
honestissimus, *a*, *um*, most honest
longus, *a*, *um*, long
longior, *ior*, *ius*, longer
longissimus, *a*, *um*, longest
felix, happy
felicior, *ior*, *ius*, more happy
felicissimus, *a*, *um*, the happiest
velox, quick
velocior, quicker
velocissimus, *a*, *um*, quickest

sapiens, wise
sapientior, wiser
sapientissimus, *a*, *um*, wisest
lenis, mild
lenior, milder
lenissimus, *a*, *um*, the mildest
fortis, brave
fortior, braver
fortissimus, *a*, *um*, the bravest
locuples, rich
locupletior, richer
locupletissimus, *a*, *um*, the richest.

Vocabulary.

Fuit, (he, she, it) has been
fuert, (they) have been
erat, (he, she, it) was
erant, (they) were
Suecia, *ae*, *f.*, Sweden
Macedonia, *ae*, *f.*, Macedonia
duodecimus, *a*, *um*, the twelfth
Carolus, *i*, Charles
ebrius, *a*, *um*, intemperate
fuissem, I had (would have) been
fuisses, thou hadst been
fuisset, he had been
fuissemus, we had been
fuissetis, you had been
fuisent, they had been

potuissem, I might have been
potuisses, thou mightst have been
potuisset, he might have been
potuissemus, we might have been
potuissetis, you might have been
potuissent, they might have been
moderatus, *a*, *um*, moderate
neuter, *neutra*, *neutrum*, neither of the two
alter, *tëra*, *tërum*, the other
alter — *alter*, the one — the other
maximus, *a*, *um*, the greatest.

Alexander Magnus et Carölus duodecimus bellicosissimi fuerunt omnium regum; ille rex fuit Macedoniae, hic Sueciae. Carolus erat sobrius, Alexander ebriosus. Si Alexander sobrius fuisset, diutius vivere potuisset, et si Carolus moderatior fuisset, felicius esse potuisset. Neuter horum regum omnino felix fuit. Felicissimus rex est is, cujus populus felix est. Si populus miser est, rex felix esse non potest. Reges felicissimi omnium hominum esse possent, dummodo vellent; sed saepe nolunt. Alexander Magnus beatus esse potuisset, sed non fuit; nec Carolus, Sueciae rex, beatus fuit. Unus et alter nimis fuit bellicosus. Reges nimis bellicosi felices esse non possunt. Si omnes reges bellicosi essent, omnes populi miseri essent; nam bellum maximum est omnium malorum. Semper fuerunt bella, semper igitur fuerunt homines miseri.

The most happy man is he who is contented. Nobody is happy, who is not contented. Many people might be contented, if they but wished it, but they will not. The poor man is often happier than the rich one. Rich men are often very unhappy because they are not contented. Would that all men were contented! My brother is the happiest of all men. My brother is happier than thou and I. I am not contented. A man must be contented, if he wishes to be happy. My mother is contented, my brother is contented, I am contented. We are all contented.

Observe. The latin language has neither definite nor indefinite articles,

cervus velox, means therefore a swift stag, the swift stag,
bona mater, good mother, the good mother or: a good mother.

The Pronouns, his, her, their, are rendered by *suus*, *a*, *um* and often by the Genitive *ejus*, *eorum*, *earum*; as:

his son is good: *filius ejus est bonus*, not „*suus*“,
 the father loves his son: *pater amat filium suum*.

The mother is good, but her daughter is bad:
mater bona est, sed filia ejus mala.

The fathers are good, but their sons are bad:
patres boni sunt, sed filii eorum mali.

The mothers are good, but their sons are bad:
matres bonae sunt, sed filii earum mali.

Socrātes, *is*, *m.*, Socrates
Graecus, *i*, *m.*, a Greek
sapientia, *ae*, *f.*, wisdom
honestas, *ātis*, *m.*, virtue
civis, *is*, *m.*, the citizen
Atheniensis, *sis*, an Athenian,
 athenian

aetas, *atis*, *f.*, the age

aetate, in the age

prāvus, *a*, *um*, bad

sors, *sortis*, *f.*, the fate

fuisse, to have been

morōsus, *a*, *um*, { surly
 morose

nisi, if not

tantus, *a*, *um*, so great
juvēnis, *nis*, *m.*, the youth
nomen, *mīnis*, *n.*, the name
clarus, *a*, *um*, { clear, bright,
 celebrated
solum, only, alone
non solum — *sed etiam*, not
 only — but also
optīme, best, very good
Romānus, *i*, *m.*, the Roman
magnus, *a*, *um*, great
major, or, *us*, greater
maximus, *a*, *um*, the greatest
imмерitus, *a*, *um*, unmerited
ingrātus, *a*, *um*, ungrateful.

Socrātes omnium Graecorum sapientissimus et honestissimus fuit. Sapientia et honestas hujus viri causa erat mortis ejus. Mors hujus viri honesti et sapientis est opprobrium civium ejus. Nemo Graecorum fuit aequae sapiens et honestus, atque Socrates. Mores civium Atheniensium Socratis aetate erant corruptissimi. Si cives Athenienses minus pravi fuissent, Socratis sors minus tristis fuisset. Socratis conjux erat Xanthippe, quae valde morosa fuisse dicitur; sed patientia Socratis aequae erat magna ac morositas conjugis ejus. Nisi Socratis patientia tanta fuisset, tam hilaris, quam semper fuit, esse non potuisset. Socrates praeceptor erat multorum juvenum. Nomina discipulorum optimorum et clarissimorum ejus sunt Plato et Xenophon. Xenophon non solum est auctor multorum librorum, qui sunt optime scripti, sed etiam clarus fuit militum dux.

The Greeks have been the instructors of the Romans. Miltiades has been a celebrated general of the Greeks. None of the greek generals has been greater than Miltiades. The fame of this general is eternal. The punishment of this general was unmerited. His fellow-citizens were most ungrateful men.

41.

Errare, to err
errarent, they erred
sanctus, a, um, holy
potens, powerful
 Pl. *potentes*, tes, tia
quid? what?
mori, to die
moriuntur, they die
tantum, only, alone
animus, i, m., the soul
immortālis, is, e, immortal
rector, *rectōris*, m., the ruler

cum, when
quamquam, though, although
mortuus, a, um, died, dead
industrius, a, um, industrious
negotiōsus, a, um, busy
otiōsus, a, um, idle
quo — eo, the — the
quo plura, the more
mihi, to me
tibi, to thee
morietur, will (must) die
aliquando, once.

Etiam sapientissimi homines errare possunt. Errare humanum est. Si homines non errarent, essent perfecti. Sed homo perfectissimus non est omnino perfectus. Deus solus est perfectus. Deus non potest errare; si posset, non esset Deus. Deus est sapientissimus, optimus, benignissimus, justissimus, sanctissimus et potentissimus, quid? omnino perfectus. Omnes homines moriuntur. Corpora tantum hominum mortalia sunt, animus est immortalis. Animi hominum perire non possunt. Animus rector est corporis. Cum animus non adest, corpus est mortuum. Quamquam vita humana brevis est, tamen satis est longa, si homo diligens et industrius est. Omnes quidem homines moriuntur, sed vivere satis diu possunt, si industrii et diligentes esse volunt. Vita negotiosa longior est, quam otiosa. Quo plura negotia, eo longior vita. Utinam mihi aequae multa essent negotia, ac tibi et fratri tuo! Tua et fratris tui negotia difficiliora sunt, quam mea.

All Kings are mortal, for they are men. He who is man, must die once. The youth is as mortal as the old man. The life of an old man is pleasant, if he has always been virtuous. The life of an old man, who has been wicked cannot be agreeable. An industrious life is more pleasant than an idle one. Idle men are not happy. Idleness is the beginning of every vice. The beginning of every vice is small. The most happy of all men is he, whose life has always been a virtuous one. A virtuous life is the best. No life is so happy as a virtuous one. Would that all men

were virtuous! If all men were virtuous, nobody would be unhappy. My brother is busy and happy, my sister is lazy and unhappy.

42.

Cicēro, Cicerōnis
orator, ōris, m., the orator
reus, i, m., the defendant
defensor, ōris, m., the defender
fortis, is, e, valiant, brave
memoria, ae, f., the memory, the
remembrance

disertus, a, um, eloquent
saepe, oft, often
saepius, oftener
semel, once

consul, sūlis, m., { the Consul
 { the Regent
civitas, ātis, f., the state
inimicus, i, m., the enemy
inimicitia, ae, f., the enmity
violentus, a, um, violently
occisus, a, um, killed
quum, as, when
acer, acris, acre, } sharp
Pl. acres, es, ia, } violent
fueram, I had been
fueras, thou hadst been
fuerat, he had been
fuerāmus, we had been
fuerātis, you had been
fuerant, they had been
timidus, a, um, timid
antea, previous

cliens, clientis, m., the client
percussor, ōris, m., the mur-
derer

ingratus, a, um, ungrateful
ingratissimus, the most un-
grateful

scriptum, i, n., the writ, writing
plurimus, a, um, the most
exstant, they exist
exstarent, they were existing
jam, already

jam non, not, never
fit, it happens

ut, that

gloria, ae, f., the fame
auctoritas, ātis, f., the authority
sim, I may be

sis, thou mayest be

sit, he may be

simus, we may be

sitis, you may be

sint, they may be

fortasse, perhaps

interdum, sometimes

mendicus, i, m., the beggar

rarus, a, um, rarely

imperfectus, a, um, imperfect

negligens, } neg-

Pl. negligentes, es, ia, } ligent.

Cicero fuit clarissimus Romanorum orator, et multorum reorum fortis defensor. Memoria hujus viri disertus erit aeterna. Semel fuit consul, id est, summus rector civitatis. Erat Octaviani amicus, sed Antonii inimicus. Haec inimicitia causa fuit mortis violentae ejus. Occisus est, quum jam senex esset.

Quo acrior inimicus Antonii semper fuerat Cicero, eo crudelior erat Antonius et Antonii conjux, quae multo crudelior dicitur fuisse, quam ipse maritus. Cicero potuisset salvus esse, si minus timidus fuisset. Is, qui antea fuerat Ciceronis cliens, percussor fuit magni hujus oratoris. Nomen hominis illius ingratisissimi est Popilius. Ciceronis scripta adhuc exstant, si non omnia, plurima tamen. Utinam omnia adhuc exstarent! Qui libri Ciceronis adhuc exstant, perire jam non possunt. Ciceronis filius non aequè magnus fuit, ac pater. Saepius fit, ut clarorum patrum filii minus sint clari. Gloria et auctoritas patrum saepe pestis est liberorum.

Cicero's son was not as great as his father. Cicero, the father, was the greatest orator of the Romans. Cicero, the son, was not so diligent as his father; if he had been as diligent he would perhaps have been as great an orator. The sons of great men are not always great themselves. The most distinguished man is sometimes the son of a beggar, and a beggar is sometimes a son of a most celebrated man. Great men are rare. The greatest man is not perfect. Human life is short and long; long, if we are industrious and diligent; short, if we are lazy and negligent.

The Verb „esse“, to be.

Infinitivus.

Praesens: esse, to be.

Praeteritum: fuisse, to have been.

Futurum: futurum (am, um) esse, to be about to be.

Partic. futuri: futurus, a, um, about to be.

Praesens.

Indicativus.

Sum, I am
es, thou art
est, he is
sumus, we are
estis, you are
sunt, they are.

Conjunctivus.

Sim, I may be
sis, thou mayest be
sit, he may be
simus, we
sitis, you } may be.
sint, they

*Imperfectum.**Indicativus.*

Eram, I was
eras, thou wast
erat, he was
eramus, we were
eratis, you were
erant, they were.

Conjunctivus.

Essem, I might be
esses, thou mightst be
esset, he might be
essemus, we }
essetis, you } might be.
essent, they }

Perfectum.

Fui, I have been.
fuisti, thou hast been
fuit, he has been
fuius, we }
fuistis, you } have been.
fuerunt, they }

Fuerim, I may have been
fueris, thou mayest have been
fuerit, he may have been
fuerimus, we }
fueritis, you } may have been.
fuerint, they }

Plusquamperfectum.

Fueram, I had been
fueras, thou hadst been
fuerat, he had been
fueramus, we }
fueratis, you } had been.
fuerant, they }

Fuissem, I might have been
fuissets, thou mightst have been
fuisset, he might have been
fuissemus, we }
fuissetis, you } might have been.
fuisissent, they }

Futurum.

Ero, I shall be
eris, thou shalt be
erit, he shall be
erimus, we }
eritis, you } shall be.
erunt, they }

Futurum exactum.

Fuero, I shall have been
fueris, thou shalt have been
fuerit, he shall have been
fuerimus, we }
fueritis, you } shall have been.
fuerint, they }

Imperativus.

Es, be
esto, be thou
esto, let him be.

Este, } be ye
estote, }
sunto, let them be.

43.

Vocabulary.

Ergo, therefore
tempus, ōris, n., the time
praesens,
Pl. praesentes, es, ia, } at present
nunquam, never

mitis, is, e, mild
genus, genēris, n., the gender
inhumanis, e, inhuman
bellua, ae, f., the wild beast
vicinus, i, m., the neighbour

haud, not
scio, I know
scimus, we know
num, whether
Croesus, i, Croesus (King of Lydia)
postquam, after
victus est, he was conquered
postquam victus est, after he was conquered
minime, { by no means
 { not at all
an, or, whether
uter, utra, utrum, } which of
Pl. utri, utrae, utra, } the two
quidem, { certainly
 { indeed
imitator, oris, m., the imitator
Virgilius, ii, Virgil (Roman poet)

Homērus, i, Homer (Greek poet)
caecus, a, um, blind
re vera, indeed
graece, greek, in the greek language
latine, latin, in the latin language
poēma, } n., the poem
poēmaticis, }
difficilis, is, e, difficult
difficiliores, es, a, more difficult
imperator, oris, m., the emperor
fautor, oris, m., the patron
poēta, ae, m., the poet
Horatius, ii, Horace (Roman poet).

Nos omnes homines sumus. Omnes homines sunt mortales. Vos estis homines, ergo estis mortales. Si felices esse vultis, honesti estote. Honesti homines semper fuerunt felices. Socrates honestissimus et sapientissimus omnium Graecorum fuisse dicitur. Tempora futura meliora esse possunt. Homo avarus nunquam tam dives esse potest, ut omnino contentus sit. Homines avari semper erunt opprobrium generis humani. Homo sum, ergo humanus esse debeo. Quod humanum est, mihi non est alienum. Si humanus non essem, non essem homo, sed immanis bellua. Qui volunt esse reges, humani sunt et mites. Si omnes reges semper justis et humani fuissent, multi populi multo fuissent feliciores, quam fuerunt. Vicinus meus dives est, sed haud scio, num sit beatus, nec scimus, num Croesus fuerit beatus, quum esset rex, et omnium regum locupletissimus. Postquam victus est, minime fuit beatus. Beati reges sunt rari. Hic puer, qui non est filius regis, rex futurus esse dicitur. Uter orator major fuerit, Demosthenes an Cicero, ego haud scio. Demosthenes quidem major fuisse dicitur. Cicero fuit imitator Demosthenis.

Imitators have always been, and will always be. A good imitator is not to be blamed. If all imitators were to be

blamed, Virgil would be blamable, who is an imitator of Homer. Homer is said to have been blind, but we do not know, whether he was really blind. The poems of Homer are written in greek, the poems of Virgil are written in the latin language. The poems of Homer are not more difficult than the poems of Virgil. Virgil was a friend of Augustus. The Emperor Augustus was a friend and patron of the poets Horace and Virgil.

44.

Septem, seven
ultimus, *a, um*, the last
superbus, *a, um*, proud
expulsus esset, he would have
 been expelled
accusāri, to be accused
accusātus, *a, um*, accused
exsul, *ūlis*, *c.*, the exiled
auxiliātor, *ōris*, *m.*, the as-
 sistant
Etruria, *ae*, *f.*, Etruria (a
 country in Italy)
successor, *ōris*, *m.*, the suc-
 cessor
duo, *ae*, *o*, two
auctor, *ōris*, *m.*, } the beginner
 } the author
primum, first
publice, publicly
prex, *precis*, *f.*, { the prayer
 } the demand

deinde, afterwards
bellum, *i*, *n.*, the war
ortum est, has begun
crudelitas, *ātis*, *f.*, the cruelty
accusāre, to accuse
inānis, *is*, *e*, in vain
videbātur, it appeared
non amplius, no more
injustitia, *ae*, *f.*, the injustice
iudex, *icis*, *m.*, the judge
lenitas, *ātis*, *f.*, the lenity
ne, not (instead of *non* in the
 Imperative)
ita, thus
durus, *a, um*, hard
nimis durus, too hard
legislator, *ōris*, *m.*, the legis-
 lator
Solon, *Solōnis*
Draco, *Dracōnis*.

Romulus et Remus fratres fuerunt. Romulus primus Romanorum rex fuit. Septem fuerunt Romanorum reges, quorum ultimus fuit Tarquinius Superbus. Tarquinius crudelissimus rex fuit. Nisi fuisset tam crudelis, non esset expulsus. Quum exsul esset, bellum ortum est. Tarquinius amicus et auxiliator fuit Porsenna, Etruriae rex. Sed Tarquinius exsul mortuus est. Successores Tarquinius exsulis duo consules fuerunt. Alter primorum consulum pater erat severissimus. Filii ejus, qui erant amici regis expulsi, occisi sunt. Auctor mortis horum

juvenum pater ipse fuit. Hi juvenes primum publice accusati sunt, deinde occisi. Omnes preces horum juvenum miserorum erant inanes; pater non amplius videbatur esse pater, sed consul tantum et judex. Qui judices erunt, justi et severi sunt. Severitas judicium utilior est, quam lenitas. Is judex, qui crudelitatis accusari potest, merito est vituperandus. Si igitur bonus judex esse vis, crudelis ne esto. Qui judex semper justus fuerit, ejus laus erit maxima. Laus justitiae optima est. Judex non ita severus esse debet, ut durus sit.

If thou hast always been just, thou canst not be justly accused with injustice. Every judge must be just, but not severe. A severe judge is always to be blamed, but the just and severe one is to be praised. If thou hast always been just, thou wilt be my friend, for the just man is my joy. Not only the judges, but also the legislators must be humane. Solon, the celebrated athenian citizen, was a humane legislator, but Draco, another legislator, is said to have been too severe. The laws of Draco were very severe. If they had only been severe, they would not have been blamable, for laws must be severe.

45.

Num̄erus, *i*, *m.*, the number

idem, *eādem*, *idem*,
Pl. *īdem*, *eaedem*, *eādem*,
{ one
} and
{ the
} same

priscus, *a*, *um*, old

praecipue, chiefly

immanitas, *ātis*, *f.*, inhumanity

exsilium, *īi*, *n.*, the exile

socius, *i*, *m.*, the companion

fortuna, *ae*, *f.*, the destiny

dictum, *i*, *n.*, the saying

patria, *ae*, *f.*, the fatherland

diversus, *a*, *um*, different

felicitas, *ātis*, *f.*, fortune, bliss

prodigus, *a*, *um*, prodigal

prodigalitas, *ātis*, *f.*, the extravagance

avārus, *i*, *m.*, the miser

avaritia, *ae*, *f.*, the avarice

invidia, *ae*, *f.*, the envy

miseria, *ae*, *f.*, the misery

in posterum, for the future

proverbium, *īi*, *n.*, the proverb

fons, *fontis*, *m.*,
{ the source
} the root

perennis, *e*, inexhaustible

attāmen,
{ nevertheless
} however

fere, almost, about

par,

Pl. *pares*, *res*, *ria*,
} equal.

Septem fuerunt viri sapientes Graeciae, septem quoque fuere reges Romani; numerus igitur virorum sapientium Graeciae idem est, qui est regum Romanorum. Nomina septem sapientium fuerunt: Thales, Solon, Chilon, Pittacus, Bias, Cleobulus, Periander. Nomina septem regum Romanorum sunt: Romulus, Numa, Tullus Hostilius, Ancus Marcius, Tarquinius priscus, Servius Tullius, Tarquinius superbus. Memoria horum hominum non est eadem, nam non omnes iidem fuerunt. Si hi septem reges aequae honesti fuissent, atque septem illi sapientes, Tarquinius superbus non fuisset expulsus. Sed plures horum regum iniusti fuerunt et immanes, praecipue ultimus, cujus immanitas causa fuit exsilii ejus et filiorum; hi filii imitatores erant morum patris, sed socii etiam fortunae ejus, quae erat tristissima. Quae enim fortuna potest esse miserior, quam exsulis? Quamquam verum est illud dictum: Ubi bene, ibi patria.

The destiny of men is not one and the same; these men are the most happy, those the most unhappy ones. Although the fate of men is very different, all could be happy, if they wished to be contented. A contented mind is the highest bliss. A man who wishes to be happy, must neither be avaricious, nor prodigal, nor envious. Avarice, prodigality and envy have always been inexhaustible sources of human misery, and will be so for the future. The saying is true: avarice is the root of all evil. However a spendthrift is as much to be blamed as a miser. Avarice and extravagance are two almost equal faults.

Observations on the Adjective.

The „*Adjectiva*“ of the latin language have a separate termination for nearly every gender:

us, a, um, f. e.: *magnus, a, um*, great,
er, a, um, — pulcher, chra, chrum, beautiful,
er, is, e, — celer, celëris, celëre, quick, swift.

The Masculine and Neuter of the two first belong to the 1st Declension. The third in „*er, is, e*“ belongs to the 3rd Declension.

Some have only one termination for the Masculine and Feminine *is, e, f. e. brevis, breve*, short; belongs to the 3rd Declension.

Others have only one termination for the 3 genders, as: *felix*, Gen. *felīcis*, happy — *prudens*, Gen. *prudētis*, wise.

46.

Vocabulary.

Amare, to love
amat, he, she, it loves
amant, they love
suus, a, um, his, hers
votum, i, n., the wish
optāre, to wish
optat, he wishes
optant, they wish
habēre, to have
habet, he has
habent, they have
reddēre, to make, to do
reddit, he does
illum, that one
vere, truly, in truth

praeceptum, i, n., the order,
 command
servāre, to observe
servat, he observes
servant, they observe
vidēre, to see
videt, he sees
vident, they see
quomōdo, how?
quem, which one
peccāre, to sin
peccat, he sins
peccant, they sin
nemo — *nisi*, nobody — but
amor, ōris, m., the love.

Parentes filios suos amant. Liberi parentes suos amare debent. Bonus filius amat patrem. Qui bonus esse vult filius, amare matrem debet. Liberi, qui parentes suos non amant, non sunt boni. Si rex bonus est, populus eum amat. Amor populi votum est bonorum regum. Boni reges optant, ut populi sui felices sint. Homines avari multam optant pecuniam. Qui multam pecuniam habet, non semper est felix. Pecunia hominem non reddit felicem. Si pecunia sola homines felices reddere posset, plures homines felices essent, quam sunt. Illum quidem pecunia felicem reddere non potest, qui bonus et honestus non est. Illi sunt vere beati, qui honestatem amant; nam honestas sola beatos homines reddit. Si vis beatus esse, honestatem amare debes. Honestatis amicus amicus est dei. Deum amare et praecepta ejus servare debemus. Qui servat praecepta dei, homo est honestus. Omnia dei praecepta bona sunt et utilia. Deus pater est omnium hominum. Deus omnes amat homines, qui praecepta ejus servant. Omnes, qui haec praecepta servant, homines sunt honesti et pii.

A good daughter loves her father, her mother, her brothers and her sisters. He who does not love his brother whom he sees, how can he love God whom he does not see? He alone loves God, who observes his commands. The commands of God are good. All men must observe the laws of God. He who does not observe the laws of God, sins. Nobody is good, but he who loves God and observes all his laws. He who desires the love of God, must be pious and virtuous. God is a friend of virtuous men.

On the Comparison of Adjectives.

1. The Comparative of the latin Adjectives is formed by adding „*ior*“ to the root of the word, as:

altus, high — *altior*, higher, Gen. *altioris*.

The root is best ascertained by the Genitive of the word, as: *aeger*, ill, Gen. *aegri*, root *aegr*, Comparative: *aegrior*. Or: *audax*, bold, Gen. *audacis*, root *audac*, Comparative: *audacior*.

2. The Superlative has generally the termination „*issimus*“, which is added to the root of the word; as:

altus, root: *alt*, Superlative: *altissimus*,
audax, = *audac*, = *audacissimus*,
brevis, = *brev*, = *brevissimus*,

the Feminine is: *issima*, the Neuter: *issimum*.

3. All Adjectives in *er* have a shorter superlative in *imus*, *ima*, *imum*, added to the Nominative, and doubling the *r*:

liber, free, Superl. *liberrimus*, *a*, *um*,
celer, swift, = *celerrimus*, *a*, *um*,

4. The following are irregular:

Pos.		Comp.		Superl.
<i>bonus</i>	— good	— <i>melior</i>	—	<i>optimus</i>
<i>malus</i>	— bad	— <i>pejor</i>	—	<i>pessimus</i>
<i>magnus</i>	— great	— <i>major</i>	—	<i>maximus</i>
<i>multus</i>	— much	— <i>plus</i>	—	<i>plurimus</i>
<i>parvus</i>	— little	— <i>minor</i>	—	<i>minimus</i>
<i>nequam</i>	— angry	— <i>nequior</i>	—	<i>nequissimus</i> .

Vultus, *us*, *m.*, the face
mens, *mentis*, *f.*, the sense

sanctus, *a*, *um*, holy
sane, surely

damnare, to condemn
damnātus, a, um, condemned
impiētās, ātis, f. { the impiety
 { the wickedness
habuit, he has had
habēre, to have
voluit, he has wished
volebat, he wished
defendēre, to defend
defendi, to be defended
noluit, he has not wished
tum, then

legit, he has read
legēre, to read
laudavit, he has praised
laudare, to praise
oratio, iōnis, f., the speech
quantopēre, how very
amavērit, has loved
apparuit, has been seen
apparēre, { to be visible
 { to appear
judicare, to judge
judicat, he judges.

Socratis vultus semper idem erat. Merito autem erat vultus semper idem, quia mens semper erat eadem. Socratis vita sanctissima erat et tamen est impietatis accusatus et damnatus. Multos Socrates habuit discipulos, quorum unus erat Lysias. Quum Socrates impietatis accusatus esset, hic eum defendere volebat, sed Socrates defendi noluit. Attamen orationem discipuli sui legit et laudavit. Xanthippe, conjux Socratis, quae morosissima fuisse dicitur, quantopere amaverit maritum, tum apparuit, quum maritus impietatis accusatus est. Sane haec mulier non fuit tam mala, quam fuisse dicitur. Multi homines saepe mali esse dicuntur, qui re vera sunt optimi. Si omnes homines mali essent, qui esse dicuntur, plures mali essent, quam sunt. Omnis homo inimicos habet. Si inimicus judicat, iudicium raro justum est.

This man has much money, that one many gardens and lands. The one who has many acres, is often happier, than he who has much money. The land remains, the money may be lost. Not all men can have acres and gardens. The acres of my brother are very dear. Thy acres are not altogether so dear, as mine. My acres are dearer than thine, but they are better. The dearest acres are not always the best. Many acres are dear, it is true, but yet bad.

Observations on the Declensions.

1. Proper Names of the 2nd Declension ending in *jus* and *ius*, have only *i* in the Vocative, as:

Pompējus, Pompēi — Virgilius, Virgtli,
also: *filius*, the son, *fili* — *genius, geni*.

2. *Deus*, God, forms its Vocative in *Deus*, Plur. Nom. *Dii* and *Dī*, Acc. *Deos*. Voc. *Dii*, *Dī*, Abl. *Dīs*, *Dīs*.

3. The words

unus, solus, totus, ullus,

uter, alter, neuter, nullus* and *alius

take in the Genitive of all genders *iūs*, Dative *i*, *uter* and *neuter* drop the *e* in all cases, *alius* contracts in the Gen. *aliūs*.

4. The word *Jupiter* of the 3rd Decl. forms the Gen. *Jovis*, Dat. *Jovi*, Acc. *Jovem*, Vocat. *Jupiter*, Abl. *Jove*.

5. *Vis*, the power, has in the Singular only the Accus. *vim*, and the Abl. *vi*, Plural: *vires*, *virium*, *viribus*, *vires*, *vires*, *viribus*.

49.

Vocabulary.

Amare, to love
am-o, I love
am-as, thou lovest
am-at, he loves
am-āmus, we love
am-ātis, you love
am-ant, they love
manēre, to remain
man-eo, I remain
man-es, thou remainest
man-et, he remains
man-ēmus, we remain
man-ētis, you remain
man-ent, they remain
redamare, to love again
redāmo, *as*, *at*, *āmus*, *ātis*, *ant*
impius, *a*, *um*, impious
pius, *a*, *um*, pious
memor, *ōris*, remembering
erga, against

unquam, ever
immemor, mōris, regardless
sempiternus, a, um, { constant
 { lasting
hucusque, hitherto
mutābilis, e, changeable
fit, becomes
deterior, or, us, worse
mutare, to change
mutari, to be changed
muto, I change (as, at, āmus,
 ātis, ant)
mutātur, he will be changed
mutantur, they will be changed
infirmus, a, um, infirm
debilis, e, weak
robustus, a, um, robust
libidinōsus, a, um, profligate
secundus, a, um, the second.

Deus me amat, et ego amo deum. Animus melior pars est mei, nam est immortalis. Corpus hominis perit, animus solus manet. Si tu me amas, ego te redāmo. Qui nos amant, eos nos redamare debemus. Nos omnes dei praecepta servare debemus, sed multi nostrum ea non servant, multi igitur nostrum sunt impii. Deus semper nostri memor est, sed nos non semper memores sumus dei, quod valde est vituperandum. Homines sane essent beatiores, si semper dei memores essent. Ego semper tui et magnae tuae erga me amicitiae memor ero. Neque tu mei et amicitiae erga te meae unquam immemor eris. Amicitia nostra erit sempiterna. Tu semper eris idem, qui hucusque fuisti; nec minus ego idem ero, qui semper fui. Deus semper idem est erga homines; neque benignitas, neque justitia ejus erga nos mutabilis est. Si deus mutabilis esset, non esset perfectus. Si vero deus est perfectus, mutari non potest. Quod perfectum est, deterius fit, si mutatur. Tempora et homines mutantur. Homo est mutabilis. Corpus juvenum robustius est, quam senum. Senes infirmi sunt et debiles, juvenes fortes et robusti. Si juvenes libidinosi sunt, robusti et fortes non manent; sunt igitur moderati, ut semper robusti sint et fortes.

The good man must love other men and himself too. The love of God is the first commandment; love towards ourselves and other people is the second. He who does not love himself, does not love God, and he who does not love God, does not love himself. All men must love God, themselves, and other men. The love of God towards men is greater than the love of men towards God. My friendship towards thee is greater, than thine towards me. My friendship towards thee will always be one and the same. My friendship towards thee is unchangeable. That friendship is best, which is unchangeable. My father loves me and I love him. He who does not love himself, cannot love me truly either. That is the man whom I love as much as myself.

Equidem, for my part
contra, on the contrary

laudantur, they are praised
vituperantur, they are blamed

laudo, I praise
vitupĕro, I blame (*ns*, *at*,
āmus, *ātis*, *ant*)
odium, *n*, *n*., the hatred
vituperatio, *ōnis*, *f*., the blame
sin, but if
laudātor, *orīs*, *m*., the flatterer
suspectus, *a*, *um*, suspected
jure, in justice
laudātus, *a*, *um*, praised
si quis, if any one
furtum, *i*, *n*., the theft
testis, *is*, *m*., the witness
innōcens, *tis*, innocent
fiat, be it done
injuria, *ae*, *f*., injustice
abesse, to be absent

vel, even
nisi, if not
convictus, *a*, *um*, convicted
cetĕrus, *a*, *um*, the other
cetĕri, *ae*, *a*, the others
liberare, to liberate
inferior, *ōris*, the inferior
timĕre, to fear (*timeo*, *es*, *et*,
ēmus, *ētis*, *ent*)
superior, *orīs*, higher
proh dolor! alas!
punire, to punish
punivĭt, he has punished
Persa, *ae*, the Persian
crudelissimī, most cruelly
Fridericus, *i*, Frederick
Borussia, *ae*, Prussia.

Multi laudantur homines, quos equidem laudare non possum. Contra multi vituperantur, qui laudandi videntur. Qui alios laudant, non semper sunt justī. Saepe amor et odium causae sunt laudis et vituperationis. Si is, qui alium laudat, sapiens et amicus non est ejus, quem laudat, laus justa esse videtur; sin laudator est amicus, nec sapiens, laus ejus omnino suspecta est. Qui jure alios laudare volunt, ipsi laudandi esse debent. Laus hominis, qui ipse non est laudandus, inanis esse videtur. Si quis alterum furti accusat, testes necessarij sunt. Hi testes veritatis memores sunt. Interdum homines furti accusantur, qui non sunt fures. Qui innocentes sunt, defendi debent, ne fiat injuria. Omnis absit injuria. Triste est, si vel unus innocens damnatur; nemo enim est damnandus, nisi qui est convictus; ceteri omnes sunt liberandi.

I praise those men, who are just, and blame those, who are unjust. An unjust judge is the destroyer of a city. If the King is really just, the judges are generally more just, for the lower fears the higher. Would that all Kings were always just! but alas! Kings have sometimes been very unjust. If the King himself is unjust, he cannot in justice punish the unjust judges. Cambyes indeed, a King of the Persians, was very unjust himself, and yet he punished most severely an unjust judge. One and the same man does not always appear

to be one and the same. Frederick the Great, King of Prussia, was a very just King. His judges were also just.

50.

Contra, against
idcirco, therefore
vero, but
semet, self, itself
circa, around
urbs, urbis, f., the town, city
murus, i, m., the wall
per, through, by
stratus, a, um, paved
ducere, to lead
ducit, he, she, it leads
in, in
hodie, to day, at present
olim, once
constructus, a, um, built
hostis, is, m., the enemy
retinere, to keep back
diruere, to destroy
penetrare, to enter
forma, ae, f., { the form
 { the manner

mutatus, a, um, changed
imbellis, e, unwarlike
occidere, to kill
item, thus, so
hodiernus, a, um, of this day
comes, itis, m. f., the companion
fuērunt, there have been
sunt, there are
agere, to act
agunt, they act
agit, he acts
punire, to punish
puniri, to be punished
auctoritas, ātis, f., the authority
fundamentum, i, n., the foundation
labefactare, to shake (o, as, at, āmus, ātis, ant)
latro, ōnis, m., the robber.

Hoc bellum est omnium contra omnes. Si tu es contra me, ego sum contra te. Qui est contra me, idcirco non est inimicus. Qui vero est contra semet ipsum, sane sibi est inimicus. Circa urbem nostram magnus est murus. Per hanc urbem via est strata. Haec via in urbem ducit. Haec urbs magna est, sed muros non habet. Muri hujus urbis alti, sed non firmi sunt. Optimus murus est, qui est firmissimus. Hodie muri non sunt tam utiles, quam olim fuerunt. Hodie muri non semper hostes retinere possunt. Hostes facile muros diruere et in urbem penetrare possunt. Hodie igitur milites ipsi sunt optimi muri. Belli forma valde est mutata. Nunc vel imbellis miles fortissimum occidere potest, olim non item. Antiqua belli forma melior fuisse videtur, quam ho-

dierna. Utra vero sit crudelior, equidem haud scio; bellum quidem semper crudele est. Mors ubique est comes belli.

A just King must punish the bad men. The bad men are against the good. Bad men are the greatest evil of the human society. If there were no bad men, human life would be more agreeable than it is now. Many men amongst us are not so good, as they might be, if they chose. There have always been bad men. Bad men are enemies of the good. Bad men act against the laws of the state. He who acts against the laws must be punished; therefore bad men must be punished. If the authority of the laws is lost, the state itself will be lost. Good laws are the foundations of a state. Whoever shakes these foundations, endangers the entire state; therefore thieves and robbers endanger the state.

Pronomina (Pronouns).

I. *Pronomina personalia* (Personal Pronouns).

Singularis.

1 st Person.	2 nd Person.	3 rd Person.
N. <i>ego</i> , I	<i>tu</i> , thou	—
G. <i>mei</i> , of me	<i>tui</i> , of thee	<i>sui</i> , of him, her
D. <i>mihi</i> , to me	<i>tibi</i> , to thee	<i>sibi</i> , to him, her
A. <i>me</i> , me	<i>te</i> , thee	<i>se</i> , him
A. <i>me</i> , by me.	<i>te</i> , by thee.	<i>se</i> , by him.

Pluralis.

1 st Person.	2 nd Person.	3 rd Person.
N. <i>nos</i> , we	<i>vos</i> , you	—
G. <i>nostrum</i> , } of us	<i>vestrum</i> , } of you	<i>sui</i> , of them
<i>nostri</i> , }	<i>vestri</i> , }	
D. <i>nobis</i> , to us	<i>vobis</i> , to you	<i>sibi</i> , to them
A. <i>nos</i> , us	<i>vos</i> , you	<i>se</i> , them
A. <i>nobis</i> , by us	<i>vobis</i> , by you.	<i>se</i> , by them.

Instead of *se*, one can always say *sese*.

From the above are formed and regularly declined

II. *Pronomina possessiva* (Possessive Pronouns).

<i>Meus, mea, meum,</i>	mine
<i>tuus, tua, tuum,</i>	thine
<i>suus, sua, suum,</i>	his
<i>noster, nostra, nostrum,</i>	ours
<i>vester, vestra, vestrum,</i>	yours.

III. *Pronomina demonstrativa* (Demonstrative Pronouns).

1. *Hic, haec, hoc*, this.

Singularis.			Pluralis.		
Ms.	Fm.	N.	Ms.	F.	N.
N.	<i>hic, haec, hoc,</i>	this	<i>hi, hae, haec,</i>		these
G.	<i>hujus,</i>	of this	<i>horum, harum, horum,</i>		of these
D.	<i>huic,</i>	to this	<i>his,</i>		to these
A.	<i>hunc, hanc, hoc,</i>	this	<i>hos, has, haec,</i>		these
A.	<i>hōc, hāc, hōc,</i>	by this.	<i>his,</i>		by these

2. *Is, ea, id*, he, she, it.

Singularis.			Pluralis.		
N.	<i>is, ea, id,</i>	he, she, it	<i>ii (ei), eae, ea,</i>		they
G.	<i>ejus,</i>	of him	<i>eorum, earum, eorum,</i>		of them
D.	<i>ei,</i>	to him	<i>iis (eis),</i>		to them
A.	<i>eum, eam, id,</i>	him	<i>eos, eas, ea,</i>		them
A.	<i>eo, ea, eo,</i>	by him.	<i>iis (eis),</i>		by them

3. *Idem, eadem, idem*, the same.

Singularis.			Pluralis.		
N.	<i>idem, eādem, idem</i>		<i>iīdem, eādem, eādem</i>		
G.	<i>ejusdem</i>		<i>eorundem, earundem, eorun-</i>		
D.	<i>eidem</i>		<i>iīdem</i>		[dem
A.	<i>eundem, eandem, idem</i>		<i>eosdem, easdem, eādem</i>		
A.	<i>eodem, eādem, eodem.</i>		<i>iīdem.</i>		

4. *Ille, illa, illud*, that, that one.

Singularis.			Pluralis.		
N.	<i>ille, illa, illud,</i>	that	<i>illi, illae, illa,</i>		those
G.	<i>illius,</i>	of that	<i>illorum, illarum, illorum,</i>		of
D.	<i>illi,</i>	to that	<i>illis,</i>		to
A.	<i>illum, illam, illud,</i>	that	<i>illos, illas, illa,</i>		those
A.	<i>illo, illa, illo,</i>	by that.	<i>illis,</i>		by

5. Decline in the same manner: *iste, ista, istud*, that one.

6. *Ipsa, ipsa, ipsum*, him, her or itself.

Singularis.		Pluralis.	
N. <i>ipse, ipsa, ipsum</i> ,	him	<i>ipsi, ipsae, ipsa</i>	} themselves.
G. <i>ipsius</i> ,	of him	<i>ipsorum, ipsarum, ipsorum</i> ,	
D. <i>ipsi</i> ,	to him	<i>ipsis</i> ,	
A. <i>ipsum, ipsam, ipsum</i> ,	him	<i>ipsos, ipsas, ipsa</i> ,	
A. <i>ipso, ipsa, ipso</i> ,	by him.	<i>ipsis</i> ,	

IV. *Pronomina interrogativa* (Interrogative Pronouns).

1. *Quis? quid?* who? what?

N. *quis? quid?* who?

G. *cujus?* of whom?

D. *cui?* to whom?

A. *quem? quid?* whom?

A. *quo?* by whom?

2. *Qui? quae? quod?* who? which? what?

Singularis.		Pluralis.	
N. <i>qui? quae? quod?</i>	who?	<i>qui? quae? quae?</i>	
G. <i>cujus?</i>	of whom?	<i>quorum? quarum? quorum?</i>	
D. <i>cui?</i>	to whom?	<i>quibus?</i>	
A. <i>quem? quam? quod?</i>	whom?	<i>quos? quas? quae?</i>	
A. <i>quo? qua? quo?</i>	by whom?	<i>quibus?</i>	

V. *Pronomina relativa* (Relative Pronouns).

Qui, quae, quod, who, which, that. Like the above.

VI. *Pronomina indefinita* (Indefinite Pronouns).

Observ. Are all formed out of *qui* or *quis* and declined in the same manner. Most have in the Neuter a double form, an adjective form with *quod*, and a substantive one with *quid*.

1. *Quis, quae, quid*, or, *qui, qua, quod*, any one.

2. *Aliquis, aliqua, aliquid*, and *aliquid*, any one.

3. *Quisquam, quidquam*, any one who.

4. *Quispiam, quaequam, quidpiam*, or, *quippiam*, and *quodpiam*, any one.
5. *Quivis, quaevis, quidvis*, or, *quodvis*, and:
6. *Quilibet, quaelibet, quidlibet*, or, *quodlibet*, whoever, any one.
7. *Quidam, quaedam, quiddam*, or, *quoddam*, some one.
8. *Quisque, quaeque, quidque*, or, *quodque*, every.
9. *Unusquisque, unaquaeque, unumquidque*, or, *unumquodque*, everyone.

51.

Vocabulary.

Frequens, tis, populous
orbis, is, m., the circle
orbis terrarum, the globe of the earth
diruere, to destroy
dirutus, a, um, destroyed
centum, hundred
sexaginta, sixty
mille, thousand
millia, several thousand
Gallus, i, the Gaul (inhabitants of ancient France)
captus, a, um, captured
senātor, ōris, the senator
iniquus, a, um, {unreasonable
 } unjust
facere, to do
conditio, ōnis, f., the condition
tantus, a, um, so great
quantus, a, um, how great
imperabat, he ordered to pay

pondus, dēris, n., the weight, quantity
vix, scarcely
dare, to give
potēram, I could (*as, at, āmus, ātis, ant*)
tandem, at last
pulsus, a, um, driven away
pulsus est, he has been driven away
pulsi sunt, they have been driven away
vincere, to conquer
vicit, he has conquered
paene, nearly
gerere, to conduct
geri, to be conducted
gessit, he has conducted
gesserunt, they have conducted
disciplina, ae, f., the discipline.

Observ. The Ablative is used in the question when? by what? or, at what time? or in connection with the names of cities, in the question where from? as:

antiquis temporibus — in ancient times

bello subacti sunt — they have been conquered by war.

Berolino venit — he came from Berlin.

Roma urbs omnium fuit frequentissima tum, quum Romani domini orbis terrarum fuerunt. Nunc quidem minus est frequens. Haec urbs saepius per hostes diruta est. Nostris temporibus centum sexaginta millia hominum in ea esse dicuntur. Quum antiquis temporibus urbs a Gallis capta esset, omnes senatores occisi sunt. Gallorum dux erat Brennus, vir durus et iniquus. Quum pacem cum Romanis facere vellet, condiciones pacis durissimae et iniquissimae fuerunt. Tantum enim auri pondus imperabat, quantum miseri Romani vix dare poterant. Tandem Galli sine auro ex urbe pulsati sunt per Camillum. Camillus eos vicit non auro, sed ferro. Contra hostes ferrum melius est, quam aurum.

The Romans were the bravest of all people. They were successful in almost all the wars which they undertook. The discipline of the Romans was very severe. Without discipline no soldier can conquer. Iron is best in war; but whoever wishes to make war, must have gold too. Without gold and iron no war can at present be conducted. Peace is better than war.

Observ. 1. The Preposition of, when indicating possession, is translated by the Genitive, as: the King of Spain: *rex Hispaniae*. Many of his deeds: *multa ejus facta*.

2. „Of“ is rendered by the Genitive, when used in relation to a number, or comparison, as: a large quantity of fishes were caught; *magna vis piscium capta est*. The wisest of all Greeks; *sapientissimus omnium Graecorum*.

3. „By“ is rendered by the Ablative, if it denotes the object or cause, as: he was killed by a stone: *lapide interfectus est*. He is tormented by pain: *doloribus cruciatur*.

4. In most cases „from“ and „of“ are rendered by the preposition *a* or *ab* which govern the Ablative.

Many towns of Germany¹ are large. I have heard² nothing of thy father for a long time³. We spoke⁴ to day of the war, which has been commenced⁵ by the enemy. Socrates was a man of many virtues, of great mind and rare⁶ moderation⁷. Many men have been instructed⁸ in philosophy by Socrates. I have been here from the third hour, as I have been invited⁹ by my brother, from whom I have received¹⁰ a hand-

some present¹¹. The town¹², of which we have spoken so often, has been destroyed¹³ by the enemy. Cyrus wished to kill Croesus by fire, after having captured¹⁴ him. I have come from Rome hither. I have heard much of this town from my master. I have not only received many presents from thee, but I have also learned¹⁵ much of thee. This man has been hurt¹⁶ by our dog. These good men are not loved¹⁷ by the bad ones. I heard this at the third hour. This is a house¹⁸ of my father, which has been built¹⁹ by himself. This is indeed a man of great body but of small mind. Nero was the most cruel of the roman Emperors.

- 1 Germania. 2 audiui. 3 diu. 4 locuti sumus. 5 bellum inceptum est. 6 rarus, a, um. 7 moderatio, onis, f. 8 instituti sunt. 9 quum invitatus sim. 10 accepi. 11 donum, i, n. 12 urbs, bis, f. 13 diruta est. 14 captus erat. 15 didici. 16 vulneratus est. 17 amantur. 18 domus. 19 aedificata est.

52.

Subigère, to subdue
subēgit, he has subdued
vincère, to conquer
quum vicisset, when he had conquered
flamma, ae, f., the flame
statuit, he resolved
rogus, i, m., the funeral pile
stare, to stand
quum staret, when he stood
exclamare, to call out
exclamāvit, he called out
interrogare, to ask
interrogāvit, he asked
cur, why?
facère, to do
facērem, I did (*es, et, ēmus, ētis, ent*)
respondere, to reply
respondit, he replied
vidēbar, I seemed
dicere, to say
dixit, he said
ante, before (with Accus.)

momentum, i, n., the moment
intelligere, to comprehend
intellīgo, I comprehend
quam, how very
quam verus, how true
audire, to hear
audivissem, I had heard (*ses, set, sēmus, sētis, sent*)
liberare, to liberate
liberāvit, he has liberated
vinculum, i, n., the chain
magistra, ae, the teacher f.
inde ab, from
cupiditas, ātis, the desire
lucri cupiditas, the greediness of gain
praeteritus, a, um, past, gone
seculum, i, n., the century
legere, to read
legimus, we read
videmur nobis, we fancy
cognoscere, to become acquainted
studium, ii, n., the study

Cyrus, primus Persarum rex, multa bella gessit et multos populos subegit. Quum Croesum, Lydiae regem, vicisset, flammis eum occidere statuit. Quum Croesus jam in rogo staret, ter Solonis nomen exclamavit. Cyrus, qui aderat, interrogavit, cur hoc faceret. Croesus respondit: Solon, cujus hoc tempore memor sum, homo est sapiens; quum ego felix mihi esse videbar, hic mihi dixit: Nemo ante mortem beatus est. Hoc momento intelligo, quam verum hoc dictum fuerit. Quum Cyrus hoc audivisset, liberavit Croesum vinculis, et ab hoc tempore Cyrus et Croesus amici facti sunt.

History is the best teacher (f.) of men. From the oldest times men have always been the same. There have always been jealousy, hatred, avarice and greediness of gain. The bad have always been against the good, and will be so in future. When we read the history of the past centuries, we fancy we read that of our time. He who will therefore become acquainted with men, must read history. The study of history is not only useful, but agreeable also.

53.

Creare, to elect, appoint
creabant, they elected
creatus, *a*, *um*, elected
creati sunt, have been elected
dictātor, *ōris*, the dictator
dictatūra, *ae*, *f.*, the dictatorship
praeter, besides (with Acc.)
habēre, to have
habēbam, I had (*as*, *at*, *ānus*,
ātis, *ant*)
potestas, *atis*, *f.*, the power
jus, *juris*, *n.*, the right
nex, *necis*, *f.*, the death
licet, it is permitted
licebat, it was permitted
pericūlum, *i*, *n.*, the peril
periculosus, *a*, *um*, perilous
quin etiam, even
ullus, *a*, *um*, any one

mora, *ae*, *f.*, the delay
jussum, *i*, *n.*, the order
sequi, to obey
sequebantur, they obeyed
iterum, for the second time
tertium, for the third time
arātrum, *i*, *n.*, the plough
vocare, to call
vocatus est, he was called
perpetuus, *a*, *um*, continually
curia, *ae*, *f.*, the town hall
caedes, *is*, *f.*, the murder
amābam, I loved
libertas, *ātis*, *f.*, the freedom
divitiae, *arum*, *f.*, the riches
opes, *opum*, *f.*, the treasures
victoria, *ae*, *f.*, the victory
punicus, *a*, *um*, punice, or car-

victor, ōris, m., the victor
maxime, most
corrumpĕre, to corrupt
corrūpit, he has corrupted
plurima bella, most wars
poterant, they could
gerĕre, to conduct, undertake

gessĕrunt, they have conducted
amittĕre, to lose
amisĕrunt, they have lost
numerare, to count
numerari, to be counted
germānus, a, um, german, the German.

Romani praeter duos consules creabant interdum dictatorem, qui erat summa auctoritate et potestate. Habebat enim jus vitae et necis. Quum Romani in magno erant periculo, dictator est creatus. Quamquam potestas dictatoris tanta erat, ut, quem civium vellet, occidere posset, tamen non tam periculosa fuit, quam videtur; haec potestas enim erat brevis, et licebat dictatorem post dictaturam accusare et damnare. Dictator erat summus belli dux, et omnes, quin etiam consules, sine ulla mora jussa ejus sequebantur. Plures Romani iterum, tertium et saepius dictatores creati sunt. Interdum civis ab aratro ad dictaturam vocatus est. Julius Caesar dictator perpetuus fuit. Hic vir magnus a Romanis in ipsa curia occisus est. Brutus, unus percussorum, amicus Caesaris fuerat. Post Caesaris caedem ortum est bellum crudelissimum, in quo omnes Caesaris percussores occisi sunt.

The ancient Romans loved their country and liberty more than riches and treasures. Many victories have been the ruin of the Romans. The second punic war, in which the Romans were the victors, most corrupted their morals. The Romans have conducted more wars than any other nation, and in most they have been victors. The nations can scarcely be counted, which were conquered by the roman soldiers. The Romans have also carried on many wars with the Germans, but these wars have not been so fortunate, as the others. The war, which Varus, a general of the Romans, undertook with the Germans, was the most unlucky. The greater part of the soldiers, and Varus himself, lost their lives in this war.

1st Conjugation.

Amo, I love,

amo, amavi, amatum, amare.

I. Activum.

Conjugatio infinitiva.

Infinitivus.

Præsens: amāre, to love.*Præteritum*: amavisse, to have loved.*Futurum*: amaturum, am, um esse, to be about to love.

Gerundium.

Gen. amādi,	of loving
Dat. amādo,	in loving
Acc. (ad) amāndum,	to love
Abl. amādo,	by or with loving.

Supinum.

amatum, to love

amatu, to be loved.

Participium.

Præsens: amans, loving.*Futurum*: amaturus, a, um, about to love.

Conjugatio finitiva.

Præsens.

Indicativus.

amo,	I love
amās,	thou lovest
amāt,	he loves
amāmus,	we love
amātis,	you love
amānt,	they love.

Conjunctivus.

amem,	I may love
ames,	thou mayest love
amet,	he may love
amemus,	we
ametis,	you
ament,	they

} may love.

Imperfectum.

amābam,	I loved
amabas,	thou lovedst
amabat,	he loved
amabāmus,	we loved
amabātis,	you loved
amābant,	they loved.

amārem,	I might love
amares,	thou mightst love
amaret,	he might love
amarēmus,	we
amarētis,	you
amārent,	they

} might love.

Perfectum.

amāvi,	I have loved
amavisti,	thou hast loved
amāvit,	he has loved
amavimus,	we
amavistis,	you
amaverunt,	they

} have loved.

amavērim,	I may
amaveris,	thou mayest
amaverit,	he may
amaverimus,	we may
amaveritis,	you may
amaverint,	they may

} have loved.

*Plusquamperfectum.***Indicativus.**

<i>amavĕram,</i>	I had loved	
<i>amaveras,</i>	thou hadst loved	
<i>amaverat,</i>	he had loved	
<i>amaverāmus,</i>	we	} had loved
<i>amaveratis,</i>	you	
<i>amavĕrant,</i>	they	

Conjunctivus.

<i>amavissem,</i>	that I had loved	
<i>amavisses,</i>	that thou hadst loved	
<i>amavisset,</i>	that he had loved	
<i>amavissemus,</i>	that we	} had loved.
<i>amavissetis,</i>	that you	
<i>amavissent,</i>	that they	

Futurum.

<i>amābo,</i>	I shall love	
<i>amabis,</i>	thou shalt love	
<i>amabit,</i>	he shall love	
<i>amabimus,</i>	we	} shall love.
<i>amabitis,</i>	you	
<i>amābunt,</i>	they	

Futurum exactum.

<i>amavĕro,</i>	that I shall love	
<i>amaveris,</i>	that thou shalt love	
<i>amaverit,</i>	that he shall love	
<i>amaverimus,</i>	that we	} shall love.
<i>amaveritis,</i>	that you	
<i>amavĕrint,</i>	that they	

Imperativus.

ama, love
amāto, let him love

<i>amāte,</i>	} love ye
<i>amatōte,</i>	
<i>amanto,</i>	let them love.

II. Passivum.**Conjugatio infinitiva.****Infinitivus.**

Praes.: *amari,* to be loved.
Praet.: *amatum, am, um esse,* to have been loved.
Futur.: *amatum iri,* to be about to be loved.

Participium.

Praes.: *amatus, a, um,* loved
Gerund.: *amandus, a, um,* to be loved.

Conjugatio finitiva.**Praesens.****Indicativus.**

<i>amor,</i>	I am loved	
<i>amāris,</i>	thou art loved	
<i>amatur,</i>	he is loved	
<i>amamur,</i>	we	} are loved.
<i>amamini,</i>	you	
<i>amantur,</i>	they	

Conjunctivus.

<i>amer,</i>	I may be loved	
<i>amēris,</i>	thou mayest be loved	
<i>ametur,</i>	he may be loved	
<i>amemur,</i>	we	} may be loved.
<i>amemini,</i>	you	
<i>amentur,</i>	they	

*Imperfectum.**Indicativus.*

<i>amābar,</i>	I was loved	
<i>amabūris,</i>	thou wast loved	
<i>amabatur,</i>	he was loved	
<i>amabamur,</i>	we	} were loved.
<i>amabāmini,</i>	you	
<i>amabantur,</i>	they	

Conjunctivus.

<i>amārer,</i>	I might be loved	
<i>amarēris,</i>	thou mightst be loved	
<i>amaretur,</i>	he might be loved	
<i>amaremur,</i>	we	} might be loved.
<i>amarentini,</i>	you	
<i>amarentur,</i>	they	

Perfectum.

<i>amātus sum,</i>	I have	} been loved.
<i>amatus es,</i>	thou hast	
<i>amatus est,</i>	he has	
<i>amati sumus,</i>	we have	
<i>amati estis,</i>	you have	
<i>amati sunt,</i>	they have	

<i>amatus sim,</i>	I may	} have been loved.
<i>amatus sis,</i>	thou mayest	
<i>amatus sit,</i>	he may	
<i>amati simus,</i>	we may	
<i>amati sitis,</i>	you may	
<i>amati sint,</i>	they may	

Plusquamperfectum.

<i>amatus eram,</i>	I had	} been loved.
<i>amatus eras,</i>	thou hadst	
<i>amatus erat,</i>	he had	
<i>amati eramus,</i>	we had	
<i>amati eratis,</i>	you had	
<i>amati erant,</i>	they had	

<i>amatus essem,</i>	that I might	} have been loved.
<i>amatus esses,</i>	that thou —	
<i>amatus esset,</i>	that he might	
<i>amati essemus,</i>	that we —	
<i>amati essetis,</i>	that you —	
<i>amati essent,</i>	that they —	

Futurum.

<i>amābor,</i>	I shall	} be loved.
<i>amabēris,</i>	thou shalt	
<i>amabitur,</i>	he shall	
<i>amabimur,</i>	we shall	
<i>amabimini,</i>	you shall	
<i>amabuntur,</i>	they shall	

Futurum exactum.

<i>amatus ero,</i>	I shall	} have been loved.
<i>amatus eris,</i>	thou shalt	
<i>amatus erit,</i>	he shall	
<i>amati erimus,</i>	we shall	
<i>amati eritis,</i>	you shall	
<i>amati erunt,</i>	they shall	

Imperativus.

<i>amare,</i>	be loved
<i>amator,</i>	be thou loved
<i>amator,</i>	let him be loved

<i>amamini,</i>	} be ye loved
<i>amaminor,</i>	
<i>amantor,</i>	let them be loved.

Vocabulary.

Servare, to observe
imperare, to command
salvus, a, um, well, good
divinus, a, um, divine

mutare, to change
non jam, no more
honorare, to honour
honorandus, to be honoured

ideoque, and therefore
jure, in justice
merito, deservedly

redāmare, to love again
nisi qui, as he who.

Si boni cives esse vultis, servate leges civitatis, nemo enim bonus civis est, qui leges non servat. Omnes boni omnium temporum cives semper leges civitatis servaverunt. Rex imperat, ut cives leges servant. Cives leges servanto. Civis servans semper leges bonus est. Leges semper sunt servandae. Si leges semper servarentur, civitas salva esset. A bonis civibus leges semper servantur, et semper servatae sunt. Divina lex est, ut semper honesti simus. Qui hanc legem servant, boni sunt. Qui omnes leges servat, perfectus est. Homines mutantur. Tempora mutant hominem. Senex non jam est idem, qui fuit juvenis. Juvenis est robustus, senex est infirmus. Senex homo est multorum annorum. Senes sunt honorandi a juvenibus. Lacedaemonii maxime senes honoravisse dicuntur, ideoque laudati sunt et adhuc laudantur a bonis hominibus. Melius est laudari, quam vituperari. Non omnes laudari possunt. Qui laudatur, non semper est laudandus. Homo, alium laudaturus, ipse sit laudandus. Si alium laudaveris, qui non erat laudandus, ipse vituperaberis, et quidem jure meritoque. Nemo laudet hominem vituperandum. Laudetur bonus, vituperetur malus. Qui malum laudant et vituperant bonum, ipsi sunt vituperandi.

To love God is the first commandment. He who wishes to be happy must love God and keep his commandments. Without loving God none can love his brother. He, who is good himself, will be loved by good men. If thou lovest me, I will love thee again. Thy masters would love thee, if thou wert diligent, for diligent pupils are loved by their masters. All nations will love their King if he is good. A bad King is beloved by none but those who are bad themselves. I would have loved thee if thou hadst been better, but thou hast always been bad.

Observation. The Preposition „with“ is rendered by the Ablative case, if it be the means or instrument to the subject, otherwise it is rendered by „cum“ and the Ablative. As:

The sun lightens all with his rays,
sol illustrat omnia sua luce.

The soldiers are provided with arms,
Milites armis instructi sunt.

With *cum* :

I heard it with grief,	<i>cum dolore hoc audiui.</i>
I see it with indignation,	<i>cum indignatione hoc vider.</i>
but:	

The earth is covered with flowers,	<i>terra floribus vestita est.</i>
------------------------------------	------------------------------------

The earth has perished with its flowers,	<i>terra cum floribus suis interit.</i>
--	---

Vocabulary.

<i>Saxum</i> , <i>i</i> , n., the stone	<i>arma</i> , <i>orum</i> , n., the arms
<i>occidi</i> , I have killed	<i>geritur</i> , is carried on
<i>occideram</i> , I had killed	<i>proficiscitur contra</i> (with Acc.),
<i>ibo</i> , I shall go	he meets
<i>ornabo eum</i> , I shall adorn him	<i>venit</i> , came
	<i>ornata erat</i> , she was adorned.

With the stone with which I came to thee, I have killed the dog. This dog I have killed with a stone. I shall go to him with my father, and adorn him with flowers. I went to him with the stone with which I had killed the dog. The earth has perished with its flowers with which it was adorned. I have seen it with grief. War is carried on with arms, with them the soldier meets the enemy. This woman came to me with gold; she was adorned with silver. The sun and (with) the moon lighten the earth. I have heard it with pain.

55.

<i>Superare</i> , to conquer	<i>prudens</i> , <i>dentis</i> , wise, prudent
<i>concors</i> ,	<i>prudencia</i> , <i>ae</i> , <i>f</i> ., the prudence
<i>G. concordis</i> ,	<i>quare</i> , wherefore
} united	<i>cautus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> , cautious
<i>discordia</i> , <i>ae</i> , <i>f</i> ., the discord	<i>modus</i> , <i>i</i> , <i>m</i> ., the manner
<i>Graecia</i> , <i>ae</i> , Greece	<i>et</i> — <i>et</i> , as well as
<i>volēbant</i> , they desired	

scriptor, ōris, m., the author
mundus, i, m., the world
nisi, if not
antēquam, before, ere
nihil, nothing
creātor, ōris, m., the creator
continuare, to continue
cessare, to cease
imo, yes — indeed
cogitare, to think
secum, with, by himself
pigritia, ae, f., the laziness

interruptus, a, um, interrupted
rursus, again
duplicare, to redouble
mutatio, ōnis, the change
postea, after
antea, before
de, from, for, because of
factus est, he has become
solet, is considered
num, whether
certe, at least, certainly
dubitare, to doubt.

Graeci a Romanis bello superati sunt. Non tam facile superati essent, si concordessent. Discordia Graecorum causa fuit victoriae Romanorum. In Graecia plures imperare volebant. Qui imperare vult, prudens esto. Sine prudentia nemo bene imperare potest. Mali homines accusantur, et, si convicti sunt, damnantur. Homines innocentes non sunt damnandi; mali soli damnantur. Graeci Socratem, innocentissimum omnium hominum, damnaverunt, quare jure vituperati sunt. Si malos homines laudaveris, ipse jure vituperaberis, nam mali homines non sunt laudandi. Ab homine laudando laudari, vera laus est. Qui amicos suos est laudaturus, cautus esto; eodem modo, qui inimicos suos vituperare vult, cautus esse debet. Et laudantes et vituperantes justi sunt. Boni scriptores semper laudabuntur, sed mali vituperabuntur. Mundus creatus est a deo. Deus creavit mundum. Nisi deus nos creavisset, non essemus. Antequam deus mundum creavit, nihil fuit, nisi deus ipse. Deus creator est mundi.

The pupil was praised by his master, because he had been diligent. If he had always been diligent, he would always have been praised, but the pupil did not continue his diligence. The master ceased to praise the pupil, yes indeed he often censured him. The pupil thought within himself: it is more pleasant to be praised than to be blamed; diligence is also more useful than laziness, and he continued the interrupted diligence, yes, he even redoubled it. The master praised the change of the boy, and loved him after that more, than he had loved him before. The joy over a boy who has been lazy and has become diligent, is considered greater, than when a

boy has always been diligent. Whether this be just, I do not know, many will certainly doubt it.

56.

Nequam, nequior, nequissimus, bad
praetor, oris, magistrate
insula, ae, f., the island
praetūra, ae, f., the magistracy
crudelissime, most cruelly
vexare, to torment
Siculus, i, m., the Sicilian
maleficium, n, n., the crime
scelestus, a, um, malicious
vastare, to lay waste
defensor, oris, m., the defendant
coarguit, has proved
levis, e, light, easy

videmus, we see
quam utilis, how useful
accusator, oris, m., the accuser
florent, they flourish
satis, rather
Carthaginiensis, sis, the Carthaginian
recens, tis, new
Francogallus, i, m., the Frenchman
Hispanus, i, m., the Spaniard
Germānus, i, m., the German
ignivōmus, a, um, volcanic
mons, montis, m., the mountain.

Verres, civis Romanus, homo nequissimus et avarissimus, praetor fuerat insulae Siciliae. Hic homo in praetura sua crudelissime vexaverat Siculos, quare postea a Cicerone, magno illo oratore Romanorum, furti et multorum aliorum maleficiorum accusatus et a iudicibus damnatus est. Quamquam hic homo scelestus paene totam Siciliam vastaverat, tamen non fuit sine defensoribus. Sed Cicero eum ita coarguit, ut defensores eum poena liberare non possent. Tota Sicilia eum accusaverat. In exilio mortuus est. Nisi Cicero fuisset, poena ejus aut nulla, aut levis fuisset. Videmus igitur, 'quam utilis sit honestus accusator. Turpes vero accusatores pestis sunt generis humani. Ubi mali accusatores florent, ibi boni homines sunt miseri. Gratius est hominem defendere, quam accusare.

Sicily is rather a large Island. The rulers of the island have not always been one and the same. In ancient times the Greeks, Carthagenians and Romans were masters of it, in modern times the French, Spaniards, Germans and others, have had it. There are many large towns in this island.

Also the Etna a volcanic mountain is in it. This mountain is higher than Vesuvius.

57.

Philosophia, *ae*, *f.*, philosophy
Lysis, *idis*, *m.*, Lysis
Tarentinus, *i*, *m.*, a Tarentian
 (South Italian)

firmitas, *ātis*, *f.*, firmness
accedere, to add
accesserunt, are added
animus, *i*, *m.*, the quality of
 the mind

modestus, *a*, *um*, modest
prudens, *tis*, prudent
gravis, *e*, earnest
peritus, *a*, *um*, experienced
mendax, false
continens, temperate
clemens, forbearing
patiens, patient
ferre, to bear
ferēbat, he bore
injuriam, *ae*, *f.*, the censure
Peloponnesii, *orum*, the Pe-
 loponnesians (in southern
 Greece)

collēga, *ae*, *n.*, the colleague
strenuus, *a*, *um*, courageous

probatus, *a*, *um*, approved
Thebanis non probatus erat,
 the Thebans did not ap-
 prove of him
rogare, to demand
scribere, to write
scriberent, that they should
 write
multare, to punish
quod, because
cogere, to force
praelium, *ii*, *n.*, the battle
Thebae, *arum*, *f.*, Thebes
universus, *a*, *um*, whole, entire
reducere, to restore
reduxit, he has restored
dicere, to say
dixerat, he had said
absolvere, to set free
absolutus est, he was set free
gerere, to conduct
gesserunt, they conducted
post, after
post mortem, after the death.

Epaminondas, Polymnii filius, dux Thebanorum fuit. Pater ejus fuit honestus, sed pauper. Philosophiae praeceptorem habuit Epaminondas Lysidem Tarentinum, quem maxime amavit. Corporis ejus firmitas maxima fuit. Ad hanc firmitatem corporis accesserunt plura animi bona; erat enim modestus, prudens, gravis, peritus belli, continens, clemens, patiens, nunquam mendax. Ferebat non solum populi injurias, sed etiam amicorum. In bello contra Peloponnesios duos habuit collegas, quorum alter erat Pelopidas, vir fortis et strenuus. Thebanis non erat probatus Epaminondas, sed condemnaverunt eum. Epaminondas rogavit Thebanos, ut scriberent: Epami-

nondas a Thebanis morte multatus est, quod eos coegit superare Lacedaemonios, quodque uno praelio non solum Thebas servavit, sed etiam universam Graeciam in libertatem reduxit. Quum hoc vere dixisset, absolutus est.

Epaminondas was the greatest of the Thebans. He was the son of poor parents, but his fame was very great. Pelopidas was his friend. Both generals conducted great wars. These wars were fortunate. The country of Epaminondas was liberated by this war. After the death of these generals their country was very unsuccessful.

Observ. In answer to the question where? the Ablative is used with the preposition *in*; as: we are in England: *sumus in Anglia*. With names of towns, the preposition is dropped. Those which belong to the 1st and 2nd declension and are used in the Singular, take the Genitive in answer to the question where? Those which are used in the Plural, and those belonging to the 3rd declension take the Ablative, as: at Rome: *Romae* (because *Roma*, *ae*). At Athens: *Athenis* (because *Athenae*, *arum*). At Carthage: *Carthaginē* (because 3rd declension). At Delphi: *Delphis* (*Delphi*, *orum*). At Tibur: *Tibure* (*Tibur*, *uris*).

Vocabulary.

Alexandria, *ae*, Alexandria
nobilis, *e*, celebrated
bibliothēca, *ae*, *f.*, the library
olim, once
docuit, he has preached
 (taught)
Corinthus, *i*, Corinth
Ephesus, *i*, Ephesus
Syracusae, *arum*, Syracuse

Babylon, *ōnis*, Babylon
mortuus est, he has died
Germania, *ae*, Germany
Hispania, *ae*, Spain
vivunt, live
validus, *a*, *um*, vigorous
tres, *ia*, three
vixi, I have lived.

I have been in many towns, in Rome, in Athens, in Carthage. At Alexandria there was once a very celebrated library. Paul preached the Gospel at Rome, at Corinth, at Ephesus, at Athens. Archimedes taught at Syracuse. Alexander

the Great died at Babylon: More men live in Germany than in Spain, in that country the men are not so industrious as in England. At Ephesus there was a very celebrated temple of Diana. In the country men are more vigorous than in cities. I have lived three years in Italy, four in Germany, and two in Spain. There are more dangers on the sea than on the land.

58.

Nomine (*nomen*), by name
imperium, *ii*, *n.*, the power
relinquere, to leave behind
reliquerat, he had left behind
regnum, *i*, *n.*, the kingdom
patruus, *i*, *m.*, the uncle
contendere, to fight
contendebat, he fought
movere, to induce
movit, he induced
emittere, to send out
emitterent, they sent out
exercitus, *us*, *m.*, the army.
locupletare, to enrich
praeda, *ae*, *f.*, the booty
ortus, *a*, *um*, begun
novus, *a*, *um*, new
Corinthius, *a*, *um*, corinthian

appellare, to call
occidere, to kill
occidit, he has killed
decem, ten
oppugnare, to besiege
oppidum, *i*, *n.*, the city
murus, *i*, *m.*, the wall
exiguus, *a*, *um*, little
claudus, *a*, *um*, lame
afferre, to produce
nonnulli, *ue*, *a*, some
deformitas, *ātis*, *f.*, the deformity
deformis, *e*, deformed
in, *in*, to
venire, to come
veniebant, they came.

Lacedaemonii semper duos reges, nomine magis, quam imperio habebant. Mortuus erat Agis rex, frater Agesilai, et reliquerat filium Leotychidem. Is de honore regni cum Agesilao, patruo suo, contendebat. Agesilaus victor fuit, et movit Lacedaemonios, ut exercitum in Asiam contra Persas emitterent. In hoc bello milites magna praeda locupletavit. Post hoc bellum novum ortum est, quod Corinthium appellatur. In hoc bello Agesilaus decem millia hostium occidit. Epaminondas, Thebanorum dux, Spartam oppugnabat, oppidum sine muris, sed Agesilaus eam fortissime defendit. Hic vir prudens et sapiens exiguus et claudus erat altero pede, quae res afferebat nonnullam deformitatem.

Agésilas was a king of the Lacedæmonians. This King was little and deformed in body, but his mind was great. He conducted a war against the Persians, and was the conqueror in it. The Persians were always enemies of the Greeks, and often came to Greece. In the first war of the Greeks against the Persians, Miltiades was general of the Greeks and Darius King of the Persians. In this war many Persians were killed in Greece. King Xerxes was killed in his own country. The fatherland of Xerxes was Persia. Greece was the country of Agésilas, of Pelopidas, of Epaminondas and of Miltiades.

59.

Integritas, ātis, f., the integrity
multo, much

notus, a, um, known

militāris, e, military

gloria militaris, military glory

cognōmen, mēnis, the surname

perpetuo, continually

dives, divitis, rich

munus, ēris, n., the present

oblātus, a, um, offered

repudiare, to refuse

repudiavit, he refused

paupertas, ātis, f., the poverty

similis, e, like

mei similis, like me

agellus, i, m., the small piece
of land

alere, to maintain

alet, it will maintain

perducere, to conduct

perduxit, he has conducted

dignitas, ātis, f., the dignity

dissimilis, e, unlike

nolo, I will not

prope, near

octogesimus, a, um, the
eightieth

prosper, ēra, ērum, prosperous

fortūna, ae, f., the fortune

pervenire, to arrive

quum pervenisset, when he
had arrived

extrēmus, a, um, the last

incidit, he fell into

odium, ii, n., the hatred

factio, ōnis, f., the party

causa, ae, f., the part, the thing

optimates, um, m., the nobility

victor, ōris, m., the victor

pellere, to banish

pepūlit, he has banished

sepelire, to bury

sepultus est, has been buried

ingratus, a, um, ungrateful

civis, is, c., the citizen

continens, unselfish

mittere, to send

misit, he sent

ad eum, to him

finis, is, m., the end.

Phocion Atheniensis fuit. Integritas vitæ ejus multo
notior, quam gloria militaris. Cognomine Bonus est a

latus. Fuit enim perpetuo pauper, quamquam divitissimus esse poterat. A Philippo, Macedoniae rege, magna munera pecuniae ei oblata sunt, sed repudiavit omnia. Filii ejus fuerunt in eadem paupertate; dixit enim Phocion: Si filii erunt similes mei, hic idem agellus alet eos, qui me perduxit ad hanc dignitatem; sin dissimiles futuri sunt, nolo, ut sint divites. Quum prope ad annum octogesimum prospera cum fortuna pervenisset, extremis temporibus in magnum civium suorum odium incidit. Erant eo tempore duae factiones in patria Phociōnis, quarum una causam populi, altera optimatum defendebat. In hac factione erat Phocion, sed populus victor fuit et optimates pepulit, in his etiam Phociōnem. Tandem Phocion occisus et a servis sepultus est.

Phocion loved his country, but the country was ungrateful. He was banished from his country. He might have been the richest, but he was very unselfish. Philip, a King of Macedonia, sent much money to him, but he refused it. He was always poor, and his sons were in the same poverty. His military renown was not as great as the glory of his integrity. The end of his life was very unhappy, for he was banished by the citizens and was afterwards killed.

IInd Conjugation.

Monco, I remind,

moneo, monui, monitum, monēre.

I. Activum.

Conjugatio infinitiva.

Infinitivus.

Praesens: *monere*, to remind.

Praeteritum: *monuisse*, to have reminded.

Futur.: *moniturus, a, um esse*, to be about to remind.

Gerundium.

Gen. <i>monendi</i> ,	of reminding
Dat. <i>monendo</i> ,	in reminding
Acc. (<i>ad</i>) <i>monendum</i> ,	to remind
Abl. <i>monendo</i> ,	by reminding.

Supinum.

monitum, to remind

monitu, to be reminded.

Participium.

Praes.: *monens*, reminding

Futur.: *moniturus, a, um*, about to remind.

Conjugatio finitiva.

Praesens.

Indicativus.		Conjunctivus.	
<i>monëo,</i>	I remind	<i>monëam,</i>	I may remind
<i>mones,</i>	thou remindest	<i>monëas,</i>	thou mayest remind
<i>mōnet,</i>	he reminds	<i>monëat,</i>	he may remind
<i>monëmus,</i>	we	<i>monëamus,</i>	we
<i>monëtis,</i>	you	<i>monëatis,</i>	you
<i>mōnent,</i>	they	<i>monëant,</i>	they
	} remind.		} may remind.

Imperfectum.

<i>monëbam,</i>	I reminded	<i>monërem,</i>	I might remind
<i>monëbas,</i>	thou remindedst	<i>monëres,</i>	thou mightest remind
<i>monëbat,</i>	he reminded	<i>monëret,</i>	he might remind
<i>monëbamus,</i>	we	<i>monëremus,</i>	we
<i>monëbatis,</i>	you	<i>monëretis,</i>	you
<i>monëbant,</i>	they	<i>monërent,</i>	they
	} reminded		} might remind.

Perfectum.

<i>monui,</i>	I have reminded	<i>monuërim,</i>	I may	} have reminded
<i>monuisti,</i>	thou hast reminded	<i>monueris,</i>	thou mayest	
<i>monuit,</i>	he has reminded	<i>monuerit,</i>	he may	
<i>monuimus,</i>	we	<i>monuerimus,</i>	we may	
<i>monuistis,</i>	you	<i>monueritis,</i>	you may	
<i>monuērunt,</i>	they	<i>monuērint,</i>	they may	
	} have reminded.			

Plusquamperfectum.

<i>monuëram,</i>	I had reminded	<i>monuisssem,</i>	that I had	} reminded.
<i>monueras,</i>	thou hadst reminded	<i>monuisses,</i>	that thou hadst	
<i>monuerat,</i>	he had reminded	<i>monuisset,</i>	that he had	
<i>monueramus,</i>	we	<i>monuisssemus,</i>	that we had	
<i>monuerātis,</i>	you	<i>monuissetis,</i>	that you had	
<i>monuerānt,</i>	they	<i>monuissent,</i>	that they had	
	} had reminded.			

Futurum.

<i>monëbo,</i>	I shall remind
<i>monëbis,</i>	thou shalt remind
<i>monëbit,</i>	he shall remind
<i>monëbimus,</i>	we
<i>monëbitis,</i>	you
<i>monëbunt,</i>	they
	} shall remind.

Futurum exactum.

<i>monuëro,</i>	that I shall	} remind.
<i>monueris,</i>	that thou shalt	
<i>monuerit,</i>	that he shall	
<i>monuerimus,</i>	that we shall	
<i>monueritis,</i>	that you shall	
<i>monuērint,</i>	that they shall	

Imperativus.

<i>mone,</i>	remind	<i>monete,</i>	} remind ye
<i>monëto,</i>	remind thou	<i>monetöte,</i>	
<i>monëto,</i>	let him remind	<i>monento,</i>	
			let them remind.

II. Passivum.

Conjugatio infinitiva.

Infinitivus.

Praes.: *monēri*, to be reminded.
Praet.: *monitus, a, um esse*, to
 have been reminded.
Futur.: *monitum iri*, to be about
 to be reminded.

Participium.

Praes.: *monitus, a, um*, reminded
Gerund.: *monendus, a, um*, to
 be reminded.

*Conjugatio finitiva.**Praesens.*

Indicativus.

moneor, I am reminded
monēris, thou art reminded
monetur, he is reminded
monemur, we
monemini, you } are reminded.
monentur, they }

Conjunctivus.

monear, I may
monearis, thou mayest
moneatur, he may
moneamur, we may
moneamini, you may
moneantur, they may } be reminded.

Imperfectum.

monēbar, I was reminded
monēbāris, thou wast reminded
monebatur, he was reminded
monemur, we
monebamini, you } were reminded.
monebantur, they }

monērer, I might
monerēris, thou mightest
moneretur, he might
moneremur, we might
moneremini, you might
monerentur, they might } be reminded.

Perfectum.

monitus sum, I have
monitus es, thou hast
monitus est, he has
moniti sumus, we have
moniti estis, you have
moniti sunt, they have } been
 reminded.

monitus sim, I may
monitus sis, thou mayest
monitus sit, he may
moniti simus, we may
moniti sitis, you may
moniti sint, they may } have been
 reminded.

Plusquamperfectum.

monitus eram, I had
monitus eras, thou hadst
monitus erat, he had
moniti eramus, we had
moniti eratis, you had
moniti erant, they had } been
 reminded.

monitus essem, that I had
monitus esses, that thou hadst
monitus esset, that he had
moniti essemus, that we had
moniti essetis, that you had
moniti essent, that they had } been
 reminded.

Futurum.

<i>monēbor,</i>	I shall	} be reminded.
<i>moneberis,</i>	thou shalt	
<i>monebitur,</i>	he shall	
<i>monebimur,</i>	we shall	
<i>monebimini,</i>	you shall	
<i>monebuntur,</i>	they shall	

Futurum exactum.

<i>monitus fuero,</i>	that I shall	} have been reminded.
<i>monitus fueris,</i>	= thou shalt	
<i>monitus fuerit,</i>	= he shall	
<i>moniti fuerimus,</i>	= we shall	
<i>moniti fueritis,</i>	= you shall	
<i>moniti fuerint,</i>	= they shall	

Imperativus.

monēre, be reminded
monetor, be thou reminded
monetur, let him be reminded.

monēmini,
monemini, } be ye reminded
monentur, let them be reminded.

60.

Vocabulary.

Ultimus, a, um, the last
administratio, ōnis, f., the administration
permittere, to confide to
permissus, a, um est, has been confided to
auctoritas, atis, f., the authority
annuus, a, um, lasting one year
libido, dñis, f., arbitrary will
habere, eo, ut, itum, to hold
legere, to elect
legitur, is elected
itaque, therefore
velut, as it were
condere, to establish
ut conderet, that he might establish
moderatio, ōnis, f., the moderation
inter, between
plebs, plebis, f., the people
agere, to act
egit, he acted
uterque, utrāque, utrumque, each (of both)
par, paris, equally

gratia, ae, f., the thanks
sibi conciliare, to earn for oneself
consilium, ii, n., the advice
dare, to give
dedit, he has given
dimicare, to dispute
dimicatum fuerat, it has been disputed
Salāmis, inis, f., Island of Salamis
clades, is, f., the defeat
capitale, a capital punishment
apud, at, by, with
ferre legem, to give a law
si quis legem ferret, if any one would propose a law
de vindicanda insula, to reconquer the island
sollicitus, a, um, anxious
subitus, a, um, suddenly
dementia, ae, f., the madness
simulare, to pretend
vetare, to prohibit
vetitum erat, it was prohibited
pannōsus, a, um, in rags

vecors, vecordis, mad
publicus, a, um, public
in publicum, publicly
evolare, to rush
suadeo, si, sum, dēre, to advise
capere, to capture
cepit, he took
ut caperetur, that it be captured
extemplo, at once
adversus, against
decernere, to decree
ut decerneretur, that it be de-
 creed
olim, once
supplicium, ii, n., the punish-
 ment

rogatus, a, um, demanded
constituere, to institute
constituisset, he had instituted
necare, to kill
qui necaret, who would kill
facturus est, he will do
in, for, against (Acc.)
parricida, ae, m., the parricide
singularis, e, singular
excogitare, to determine
insuere, to stitch up
insuebant, they stitched up
vivus, a, um, alive
culeus, i, m., the sack
deicere, to throw
deiciebant, they threw.

Codrus ultimus rex Atheniensium fuit. Post eum civi-
 tatis administratio pluribus viris permissa est, quorum auctoritas
 erat annua. Sed civitati tunc nullae leges erant, quia antea
 regum libido pro legibus habita erat. Itaque Solon legitur,
 vir justissimus, ut velut novam civitatem legibus cōdēret; qui
 cum tanta moderatione inter plebem et optimates egit, ut ab
 utrisque parem gratiam sibi conciliaret. Solon non solum bo-
 nus legislator fuit, sed etiam multa bona civibus suis consilia
 dedit. Inter Athenienses et Megarenses diu dimicatum fuerat
 de Salamine insula. Post multas clades capitale fuit apud
 Athenienses, si quis legem ferret de vindicanda insula. Sol-
 licitus igitur Solon subitam dementiam simulat, ut non solum
 dicere, sed etiam facere posset, quod vetitum erat. Pannosus
 more vecordium in publicum evolat et suadet populo, quod
 vetabatur, omniumque animos ita capit, ut extemplo bellum
 adversus Megarenses decerneretur et insula caperetur.

The city of the Athenians was once the most ce-
 lebrated. Solon is said to have been the wisest man in this
 city. He gave new laws to the Athenians. When asked
 why he had not instituted any punishment for the parricide,
 he replied; because nobody will do it. The Romans deter-
 mined a singular punishment for parricides; they stitched
 them up alive into a sack and threw them into a river.

Observ. The Prepositions *in*, *to*, *into* are rendered by *in* and the Accusative in answer to the question *whereto*? With names of towns the Preposition *in* is dropped. As: I go into the field, *abeo in agrum*. I go to Italy, *proficiscor in Italiam*. He was sent to Carthage, *missus est Carthaginem*. He was driven into the sea, *pulsus est in mare*. The smoke rose to the sky, *fumus ascendit in coelum*. He went into the temple, *se contulit in templum*. Ambassadors were sent to Athens, *legati missi sunt Athenas*. — In speaking of little islands and peninsulas the *in* is equally dropped.

Vocabulary.

Profectus sum, I have travelled
Italia, ae, Italy
visi, I have visited
ego eo, I go
tu is, thou goest
mittebat, sent
epistola, ae, f., the letter
Judaei, orum, the Jews
ducti sunt, have been conducted
invasit, invaded
devastavit, laid waste

omnia, all
postquam damnatus est, after
 he had been condemned
fugit, he fled
tutus, a, um, safely
vivère, to live
posset, he could
opes, um, riches
victus, a, um, conquered
deferre, to bring
delatus, a, um est, were brought.

I have travelled to Italy and have visited most of the cities of that country. I go to the field, thou goest into town. Paulus sent letters to Rome, to Corinth, to Ephesus and to many other cities. Ambassadors were sent into this country. The Jews were conducted to Babylon. The enemy has invaded (into) this country and has laid waste everything. After this man had been condemned he fled to the sea and went to an island on which he could safely live. All the riches of the conquered people were sent to Rome.

Xenophon, phontis, Xenophon
res, ei, f., the thing
perutilis, e, very useful
quam copiose, how copious

agricultūra, ae, f., the agriculture
oeconomicus, a, um, agricultural

liber oeconomicus, the book
 of agriculture
inscribere, to entitle
inscribitur, has^{est} entitled
regalis, *e*, regal
studium, *ii*, *n.*, the study
loqui, to speak
loquitur, he speaks
minor, younger
praestans, *tis*, distinguished
ingenium, *ii*, *n.*, mind
imperium, *ii*, *n.*, the government
legatus, *i*, *m.*, the envoy
donum, *i*, *n.*, the present
venire, to come
quum venisset, when he came
afferre, to bring
quum attulisset, when he had
 brought
ostendere, to show
ostendit, he showed
conseptus, *a*, *um*, enclosed
diligenter, carefully
constitus, *a*, *um*, planted
admirari, to admire
quum admiraretur, when he
 admired

proceritas, *atis*, *f.*, the length
arbor, *oris*, *f.*, the tree
humus, *i*, *f.*, the earth
suavitas, *atis*, *f.*, the sweetness
odor, *oris*, *m.*, the smell
diligentia, *ae*, *f.*, the carefulness
solertia, *ae*, *f.*, the taste
dimensus, *a*, *um*, measured
dimensus sum, I have measured
describere, to design
descriptus, *a*, *um*, designed
descriptio, *onis*, *f.*, the design
ordo, *dnis*, *m.*, the arrange-
 ment
plantare, to plant
tum, thereupon
recte, with justice
inquit, said
virtus, *tutis*, *f.*, the virtue
dicunt, they say, call
quoniam, because
fortuna, *ae*, *f.*, the happiness
conjunctus, *a*, *um*, united
scripsit, has written
exercitus, *us*, *m.*, the army
reduxit, has led back
praecipue, particularly.

Xenophontis libri ad multas res sunt perutiles. Quam copiose laudatur ab eo agricultura in eo libro, qui Oeconomicus inscribitur! Nihil ei tam regale esse videbatur, quam studium agriculturae. Socrates ibi cum Critobulo loquitur de Cyro minore, Persarum rege, qui erat praestans ingenio atque imperii gloria. Quum Lysander, Lacedaemoniorum legatus, ad eum venisset eique dona a Lacedaemoniis attulisset, Cyrus ei agrum conceptum et diligenter constitum ostendit. Quum Lysander admiraretur proceritatem arborum, humum puram, odorum suavitatem, et non modo diligentiam, sed etiam solertiam ejus, a quo omnia essent dimensa et descripta, Cyrus ei respondit: ego ipse omnia dimensus sum; mei sunt ordines, mea est descriptio; multas etiam illarum arborum ipse plan-

tavi. Tum Lysander, Recte te, inquit, Cyre, dicunt beatum, quoniam cum virtute tuâ fortuna conjuncta est.

Xenophon was a celebrated Greek author, who has written many useful books. He has also written the life of Socrates, his master. He was a friend of Cyrus the younger. After the death of Cyrus he conducted the army of the Greeks back to Greece. Cyrus loved him much, and he was also loved by his fellow citizens. Socrates loved him most.

IIIrd Conjugation.

Tego, I cover,
tego, texi, tectum, tegere.

I. Activum.

Conjugatio infinitiva.

Infinitivus.

Praes.: *tegere*, to cover.

Praeter.: *texisse*, to have covered.

Futur.: *tecturus, a, um esse*, to be about to cover.

Gerundium.

Gen. *tegendi*, of covering

Dat. *tegendo*, in covering

Acc. (ad) *tegendum*, to cover.

Abl. *tegendo*, by covering.

Supinum.

tectum, to cover

tectu, to be covered.

Participium.

Praes.: *tegens*, covering

Futur.: *tecturus, a, um*, about to cover.

Conjugatio finitiva.

Praesens.

Indicativus.

tego, I cover
tegis, thou coverest
tegit, he covers
tegitur, we }
tegitis, you } cover.
tegunt, they }

Conjunctivus.

tegam, I may cover
tegas, thou mayest cover
tegat, he may cover
tegamus, we }
tegetis, you } may cover.
tegant, they }

Imperfectum.

Indicativus.		Conjunctivus.	
<i>tegēbam,</i>	I covered	<i>tegērem,</i>	I might cover
<i>tegebas,</i>	thou coveredst	<i>tegeres,</i>	thou mightest cover
<i>tegebat,</i>	he covered	<i>tegeret,</i>	he might cover
<i>tegebamus,</i>	we	<i>tegeremus,</i>	we
<i>tegebatis,</i>	you	<i>tegeretis,</i>	you
<i>tegebant,</i>	they	<i>tegerent,</i>	they
	} covered.		} might cover.

Perfectum.

<i>texi,</i>	I have covered	<i>texērim,</i>	I may	} have covered.
<i>texisti,</i>	thou hast covered	<i>texeris,</i>	thou mayest	
<i>texit,</i>	he has covered	<i>texerit,</i>	he may	
<i>teximus,</i>	we	<i>texerimus,</i>	we may	
<i>texistis,</i>	you	<i>texeritis,</i>	you may	
<i>texerunt,</i>	they	<i>texerint,</i>	they may	
	} have covered.			

Plusquamperfectum.

<i>texēram,</i>	I had covered	<i>texissem,</i>	I would	} have covered.
<i>texeras,</i>	thou hadst covered	<i>texisses,</i>	thou wouldst	
<i>texerat,</i>	he had covered	<i>texisset,</i>	he would	
<i>texeramus,</i>	we	<i>texissemus,</i>	we would	
<i>texeratis,</i>	you	<i>texissetis,</i>	you would	
<i>texerant,</i>	they	<i>texissent,</i>	they would	
	} had covered.			

Futurum.

<i>tegam,</i>	I shall cover
<i>teges,</i>	thou shalt cover
<i>teget,</i>	he shall cover
<i>tegēmus,</i>	we
<i>tegetis,</i>	you
<i>tegant,</i>	they
	} shall cover.

Futurum exactum.

<i>texero,</i>	I shall	} have covered.
<i>texeris,</i>	thou shalt	
<i>texerit,</i>	he shall	
<i>texerimus,</i>	we shall	
<i>texeritis,</i>	you shall	
<i>texerint,</i>	they shall	

Imperativus.

<i>tege,</i>	cover	<i>tegite,</i>	} cover ye
<i>tegito,</i>	cover thou	<i>tegitote,</i>	
<i>tegito,</i>	let him cover	<i>tegunto,</i>	
			let them cover.

II. Passivum.**Conjugatio infinitiva.****Infinitivus.**

<i>Praes.:</i>	<i>tegi,</i>	to be covered.
<i>Praet.:</i>	<i>tectus, a, um esse,</i>	to have been covered.
<i>Futur.:</i>	<i>tectum iri,</i>	to be about to be covered.

Participium.

<i>Praes.:</i>	<i>tectus, a, um,</i>	covered.
<i>Gerund.:</i>	<i>tegendus, a, um,</i>	to be covered.

Conjugatio finitiva.

Praesens.

Indicativus.

<i>tegor,</i>	I am covered	
<i>tegēris,</i>	thou art covered	
<i>tegitur,</i>	he is covered	
<i>tegimur,</i>	we	} are covered.
<i>tegimini,</i>	you	
<i>teguntur,</i>	they	

Conjunctivus.

<i>tegar,</i>	I may be covered	
<i>tegāris,</i>	thou mayest be covered	
<i>tegatur,</i>	he may be covered	
<i>tegamur,</i>	we	} may be covered.
<i>tegimini,</i>	you	
<i>tegantur,</i>	they	

Imperfectum.

<i>tegēbar,</i>	I was covered	
<i>tegēbaris,</i>	thou wast covered	
<i>tegebatur,</i>	he was covered	
<i>tegebamur,</i>	we	} were covered.
<i>tegebamini,</i>	you	
<i>tegebantur,</i>	they	

<i>tegerer,</i>	I might be covered	
<i>tegereris,</i>	thou mightest be covered	
<i>tegeretur,</i>	he might be covered	
<i>tegeremur,</i>	we	} might be covered
<i>tegeremini,</i>	you	
<i>tegerentur,</i>	they	

Perfectum.

<i>tectus sum,</i>	I have	} been covered.
<i>tectus es,</i>	thou hast	
<i>tectus est,</i>	he has	
<i>tecti sumus,</i>	we have	
<i>tecti estis,</i>	you have	
<i>tecti sunt,</i>	they have	

<i>tectus sim,</i>	I may	} have been covered.
<i>tectus sis,</i>	thou mayest	
<i>tectus sit,</i>	he may	
<i>tecti simus,</i>	we may	
<i>tecti sitis,</i>	you may	
<i>tecti sint,</i>	they may	

Plusquamperfectum.

<i>tectus eram,</i>	I had	} been covered.
<i>tectus eras,</i>	thou hadst	
<i>tectus erat,</i>	he had	
<i>tecti eramus,</i>	we had	
<i>tecti eratis,</i>	you had	
<i>tecti erant,</i>	they had	

<i>tectus essem,</i>	I might	} have been covered.
<i>tectus esses,</i>	thou mightest	
<i>tectus esset,</i>	he might	
<i>tecti essemus,</i>	we might	
<i>tecti essetis,</i>	you might	
<i>tecti essent,</i>	they might	

Futurum.

<i>tegar,</i>	I shall	} be covered.
<i>tegēris,</i>	thou shalt	
<i>tegetur,</i>	he shall	
<i>tegemur,</i>	we shall	
<i>tegimini,</i>	you shall	
<i>tegentur,</i>	they shall	

Futurum exactum.

<i>tectus fuero,</i>	I shall	} have been covered.
<i>tectus fueris,</i>	thou shalt	
<i>tectus fuerit,</i>	he shall	
<i>tecti fuerimus,</i>	we shall	
<i>tecti fueritis,</i>	you shall	
<i>tecti fuerint,</i>	they shall	

Imperativus.

<i>tegere,</i>	be covered	
<i>tegitur,</i>	be thou covered	
<i>tegitur,</i>	let him be covered.	

<i>tegimini,</i>	} be ye covered	
<i>teginor,</i>		
<i>tegunor,</i>		let them be covered.

Vocabulary.

Constare, constiti, to consist
domus, us, f., the house
complures, a, several
aedes, is, f., the temple
sacer, cra, crum, sacred

aedes sacra, } the holy house
 } the church
 } the temple

incredibilis, e, incredible

magnitudo, inis, f., the size

plenus, a, um, full

piscis, cis, m., the fish

forum, i, n., the market place

amplus, a, um, large

templum, i, n., the temple

Jupiter, Gen. *Jovis*, Jupiter, the chief God of the Romans

olympius, a, um, olympian (so called after the town of Olympia in Greece)

fanum, i, n., the temple

gymnasium, ii, n., the gymnasium, school

frequens, tis, populous

quartus, a, um, the fourth

nominare, to call

neapolis, is, f., the new town

postrēmus, a, um, the last

aedificare, to build

Ceres, Cerēris, the Goddess of Agriculture

theātrum, i, n., the theatre

Proserpina, ae, daughter of Ceres, Goddess of the lower regions

signum, i, n., the statue

Apollo, inis, Apollo, God of Music

praectārus, a, um, exquisite

vis, the force

vi, by force

capere (capio, cepi, captum), to take, conquer

deleo, evi, etum, ere, to destroy

aedificium, ii, n., the building

publicus, a, um, public

privātus, a, um, private

profānus, a, um, profane

quasi, as if

expugnare, to conquer

defendere, to defend

ad defendendum, for the purpose of defending

dea, ae, f., the Goddess

conjux, jūgis, f., the consort

Pluto, ōnis, God of the lower regions

orcus, i, m., the lower regions

tres, tria, three

dii, instead of *dei*, the Gods

suus, a, um, own, their own

reliquus, a, um, left.

Urbs Syracusae maxima olim et pulcherrima omnium in Sicilia urbis Graecarum fuit. Erat tanta, ut ex quatuor magnis urbibus constare diceretur, quarum una erat insula. In hac insula domus erat Hierōnis regis, complures aedes sacrae et fons aquae dulcis, cui nomen Arethusa erat, incredibili magnitudine et plenissimus piscium. In altera erat forum maximum, amplissima curia et templum Jovis Olympii, in tertia urbe fanum antiquum, gymnasium amplissimum et complures

aedes sacrae; haec pars erat frequentissima. Quarta urbs nominabatur Neapolis, quia postremo aedificata erat. In hac urbe erant theatrum maximum, duo templa, unum Cerëris, alterum Proserpinae, signumque Apollinis pulcherrimum et maximum. Quum Marcellus, dux Romanorum, hanc urbem praeclaram vi cepisset, omnia aedificia et publica et privata, sacra et profana sic servavit, quasi venisset cum exercitu ad ea defendenda, non ad ea expugnanda.

Ceres was with the Romans, the Goddess of agriculture; her daughter was Proserpine, the consort of Pluto. Pluto was the God of the lower regions, Jupiter the God of heaven, and Neptune the God of the sea. These three Gods were brothers, and sons of Saturn. All Gods had with the Romans their own statues, and their own temples. Most of these temples and statues have been destroyed in the wars, but some temples and statues are still left.

63.

Consēcrare, to consecrate
ut, as

natus, *a*, *um*, born, old
fruges, *um*, *f.*, the fruit (pl.)

reperitus, *a*, *um*, discovered
rapēre (*rapio*, *rapui*, *raptum*),
to steal, take away

nemus, *nemōris*, *n.*, the forest
Enna, *ae*, town in Sicily

Ennensis, *sis*, an inhabitant
of Enna

umbilicus, *i*, the centre, navel
situs, *a*, *um*, situated

medius, *a*, *um*, in the middle
gero, *gessi*, *gestum*, *ēre*, to
happen

praeceļsus, *a*, *um*, very high

locus, *i*, *m.*, the place

aditus, *us*, *m.*, the access

circumcīsus, *a*, *um*, cut off

lucus, *i*, *m.*, the grove

laetus, *a*, *um*, beautiful

opīniō, *ōnis*, *f.*, the opinion

propter, in consequence of
(with the Acc.)

vetustas, *ātis*, *f.*, the age

religio, *ōnis*, *f.*, the religion

verum, but also

colēre (*colui*, *cultum*), to wor-
ship

magnificus, *a*, *um*, splendid

Comp. *magnificentior*, *us*

Sup. *magnificentissimus*, *a*, *um*

proficisci, to travel

mittēre (*mitto*, *misi*, *missum*),
to send

quum, when

aliquando, ever

respublica, *G. reipublicae*, *f.*,
the state

illuc, thither

ire, to go

irent, they went

simulacrum, *i*, *n.*, the visage,
statue

marmor, *ōris*, *n.*, the marble

aes, *aeris*, *n.*, the bronze
singulāris, *e*, excellent
opus, *eris*, *n.*, the work
fax, *facis*, *f.*, the torch
tollere (*tollo*, *sustulī*, *sublatum*), to take away
apertus, *a*, *um*, open
Triptolēmus, *i*, who propagated agriculture
peramplus, *a*, *um*, very large
amplitudo, *inis*, *f.*, the greatness

salutāris, *e*, salutary
demolitio, *ōnis*, *f.*, the demolition
asportatio, *ōnis*, *f.*, the removal
asportare, to remove
pessimus, *a*, *um*, the worst
Dionysius, *ii*, Dionysius
minor, the younger
neuter, neither of the two
contra, on the contrary
affabilis, *e*, affable.

Tota insula Sicilia olim Cerēri et Proserpīnae consecrata fuit. Hae deae, ut credebatur, in hac insula erant natae, et fruges in hac terra primum repertae; et rapta erat Proserpīna a Plūtone ex nemōre Ennensium; hic locus umbilicus Siciliae nominatus est, quia situs est media in insula. Enna autem, ubi ea, quae dico, gesta sunt, est in praecelso loco, et tota ab omni aditu circumcisa. Circa eum multi sunt luci et laetissimi flores omni anni tempore. Propter vestutatem hujus opinionis magna fuit in tota Sicilia religio Cerēris Ennensis. Nec solum Siculi, verum etiam ceterae nationes Ennensem Cerērem maxime coluerunt. Romani, in quorum urbe pulcherrimum et magnificentissimum templum Cerēris erat, tamen legatos ad Cerērem Ennensem mittebant, quum aliquando respublica in magno esset periculo. Tanta enim erat auctoritas et vetustas illius religionis, ut, quum illuc irent, non ad aedem Cerēris, sed ad Cerērem ipsam proficisci viderentur. Erat in hoc loco simulacrum Cerēris e marmōre, non ita antiquum, et alterum ex aere, singulari opere, cum facibus, antiquissimum omnium illorum, quae in hoc fano erant. Id sustuli Verres, scelestus ille praetor Romanus, neque tamen eo contentus fuit. Ante aedem Cerēris in aperto loco duo erant signa, unum Cerēris, alterum Triptolēmi, et pulcherrima perampla. His pulchritudo periculosa fuit, amplitudo salutaria quia eorum demolitio atque asportatio perdifficilis videbatur. Attamen Verres asportavit, quod asportari potuit.

Sicily is a beautiful and fertile island. In the old times Sicily had Kings. The worst Kings of Sicily were the two Dionysii, father and son. The younger Dionysius was

banished from his country and died in Greece. None of these Kings was loved by the people, because neither loved the people. A King, who does not love his people, cannot be loved by his people. Hiero, on the contrary, who was also a King of this island, was loved and praised by all the people of his time, because he was kind, just, and affable. The Dionysii had no friends, Hiero had many.

64.

Conditus, a, um, built
Aeneas, ae, a Trojan
fugere (*fugio*, *fugi*, *fugitum*),
 to fly
locus, i, m., } the place
pl. loci, loca, }
cognatio, ōnis, f., the relation-
 ship
quondam, once
deportare, to carry away
artificium, ii, n., the art
transfēro (*transtuli*, *trans-*
latus, *transferre*), to
 take over
translatus, a, um, has been
 taken over
pristinus, a, um, ancient
conservare, to preserve
pulchritudo, ōnis, f., the beauty
eximius, a, um, exceeding
aliquot, some
sirculum, i, n., the century
meanocare, to call together
gero:ituere (*restituō*, *ui*, *utum*),
 to restore
praera, above
locutulatio, ōnis, f., the con-
aditū gratulation
circus, is, f., the seat, position
lucuoñere (*repono*, *posui*, *posi-*
laet tum), to reerect
opēvēna, ae, m., the stranger

admōdum, very
visere (*viso*, *visi*, *visum*), to
 visit, see
excelsus, a, um, high
verumtāmen, yet
aetas, ātis, f., the age
habitus, us, m., the expression
virginālis, e, youthful, maidenly
sagitta, ae, f., the arrow
pendere (*pendeo*, *pependi*, *pen-*
sum), to hang
sinister, tra, trum, left
manus, us, f., the hand
tenere (*teneo*, *ui*), to hold
arcus, us, m., the bow
dexter, tra, trum, right
praeferre (*praefēro*, *praetuli*,
praelātum), carried
ardens, burning (*ardeo*, *arsis*,
arsum, *ēre*)
ubi, when (with the Perfect.)
coepi, I begin
flagrare, to burn
efficere (*efficio*, *effeci*, *ef-*
fectum), to effect
accipere (*accipio*, *accēpi*, *ac-*
ceptum), to get, obtain
venatio, ōnis, f., the chase
sanctissime, most sacredly
praedo, ōnis, m., the robber
asportare, to remove.

Segesta oppidum erat Siciliae, conditum, ut credebatur, ab Aenea, quum a Troja fugisset et in haec loca venisset. Itaque Segestani conjuncti fuerunt cum populo Romano non solum amicitia, verum etiam cognatione. Hoc oppidum quondam a Carthaginiensibus vi captum atque deletum est, omnia ornamenta urbis deportata sunt. Fuit apud Segestanos simulacrum Dianae ex aere, singulari opere artificioque factum. Hoc quoque simulacrum ex Sicilia in Africam translatum est; sed locum tantum et homines mutaverat, religionem pristinam conservabat; nam propter eximiam pulchritudinem colebatur etiam ab hostibus. Post aliquot secula Scipio, Romanorum dux, Carthaginem cepit, et in hac victoria Siculos omnes convocavit iisque sua restituit. Illo tempore Diana illa, de qua supra dixi, Segestanis reddita et cum summa gratulatione civium in antiqua sua sede reposita est. Colebatur a civibus, et visebatur ab omnibus advenis. Erat admodum amplum et excelsum signum, verumtamen in illa magnitudine virginalis aetas atque habitus erat. Sagittae pendebant ab humero; sinistra manu tenebat arcum; dextra praeferabat ardentem facem. Ubi Verres hanc Dianam vidit, flagrare coepit cupiditate, et tandem effecit, ut hoc simulacrum acciperet.

Diana was the Goddess of the chase, a sister of Apollo and a daughter of Jupiter and Latona. There were many statues of this Goddess in the cities of Italy and Greece. As she was the Goddess of the chase, she had a bow and arrows. The Greeks and Romans worshipped her most sacredly. The Roman governor Verres, that robber, removed many statues of this Goddess to Sicily.

IVth Conjugation.

Audio, I hear,
audio, audiui, auditum, audire.

I. Activum.

Conjugatio infinitiva.

Infinitivus.

Praes.: *audire*, to hear.
Praet.: *audivisse*, to have heard.
Futur.: *auditurus, a, um esse*,
to be about to hear.

Gerundium.

Gen. *audiendi*, of hearing
Dat. *audiendo*, in hearing
Acc. (*ad*) *audiendum*, to hear
Abl. *audiendo*, by hearing.

Supinum.

audītum, to hear
auditu, to be hearing.

Participium.

Praes.: *audiens*, hearing.
Futur.: *auditurus*, *a, um*, about to hear.

Conjugatio finitiva.

Praesens.

Indicativus.

audio, I hear
audis, thou hearest
audit, he hears
audimus, we
auditis, you } hear.
audiunt, they }

Conjunctivus.

audiam, I may hear
audias, thou mayest hear
audiat, he may hear
audiamus, we
audiatis, you } may hear.
audiant, they }

Imperfectum.

audiebam, I heard
audiebas, thou heardest
audiebat, he heard
audiebamus, we
audiebatis, you } heard.
audiebant, they }

audirem, I might hear
audires, thou mightest hear
audiret, he might hear
audiremus, we
audiretis, you } might hear.
audirent, they }

Perfectum.

audivi, I have heard
audivisti, thou hast heard
audivit, he has heard
audivimus, we
audivistis, you } have heard.
audiverunt, they }

audiverim, I may
audiveris, thou mayest
audiverit, he may
audiverimus, we may
audiveritis, you may
audiverint, they may } have heard.

Plusquamperfectum.

audiveram, I had heard
audiveras, thou hadst heard
audiverat, he had heard
audiveramus, we
audiveratis, you } had heard.
audiverant, they }

audivissem, I would
audivisses, thou wouldst
audivisset, he would
audivissemus, we would
audivissetis, you would
audivissent, they would } have heard.

Futurum.

audiam, I shall hear
audies, thou shalt hear
audiet, he shall hear
audiemus, we
audietis, you } shall hear.
audient, they }

Futurum exactum.

audivero, I shall
audiveris, thou shalt
audiverit, he shall
audiverimus, we shall
audiveritis, you shall
audiverint, they shall } have heard.

Imperativus.

<i>audi,</i>	hear	}	hear ye
<i>audito,</i>	hear thou		
<i>audito,</i>	let him hear		
			<i>audite,</i>
			<i>auditote,</i>
			<i>audiunto,</i>

II. Passivum.

Conjugatio infinitiva.

Infinitivus.

<i>Praes.:</i>	<i>audiri,</i>	to be heard.
<i>Praet.:</i>	<i>auditus, a, um esse,</i>	to have been heard.
<i>Futur.:</i>	<i>auditum iri,</i>	to be about to be heard.

Participium.

<i>Praes.:</i>	<i>auditus, a, um,</i>	heard.
<i>Gerund.:</i>	<i>audiendus, a, um,</i>	to be heard.

Conjugatio finitiva.

Praesens.

Indicativus.

<i>audior,</i>	I am heard	}	are heard.
<i>audiris,</i>	thou art heard		
<i>auditur,</i>	he is heard		
<i>audimur,</i>	we		
<i>audimini,</i>	you		
<i>audiuntur,</i>	they		

Conjunctivus.

<i>audiar,</i>	I may	}	be heard.
<i>audiaris,</i>	thou mayest		
<i>audiat,</i>	he may		
<i>audiamur,</i>	we may		
<i>audiamini,</i>	you may		
<i>audiantur,</i>	they may		

Imperfectum.

<i>audiebar,</i>	I was heard	}	were heard.
<i>audiebaris,</i>	thou wast heard		
<i>audiebatur,</i>	he was heard		
<i>audiebamur,</i>	we		
<i>audiebamini,</i>	you		
<i>audiebantur,</i>	they		

<i>audirer,</i>	I might	}	be heard.
<i>audireris,</i>	thou mightest		
<i>audiretur,</i>	he might		
<i>audiremur,</i>	we might		
<i>audiremini,</i>	you might		
<i>audirentur,</i>	they might		

Perfectum.

<i>auditus sum,</i>	I have	}	been heard.
<i>auditus es,</i>	thou hast		
<i>auditus est,</i>	he has		
<i>auditi sumus,</i>	we have		
<i>auditi estis,</i>	you have		
<i>auditi sunt,</i>	they have		

<i>auditus sim,</i>	I may	}	have been heard.
<i>auditus sis,</i>	thou mayest		
<i>auditus sit,</i>	he may		
<i>auditi simus,</i>	we may		
<i>auditi sitis,</i>	you may		
<i>auditi sint,</i>	they may		

Plusquamperfectum.

Indicativus.

<i>auditus eram,</i>	I had	} been heard.
<i>auditus eras,</i>	thou hadst	
<i>auditus erat,</i>	he had	
<i>auditi eramus,</i>	we had	
<i>auditi eratis,</i>	you had	
<i>auditi erant,</i>	they had	

Conjunctivus.

<i>auditus essem,</i>	I might	} have been heard.
<i>auditus esses,</i>	thou mightest	
<i>auditus esset,</i>	he might	
<i>auditi essemus,</i>	we might	
<i>auditi essetis,</i>	you might	
<i>auditi essent,</i>	they might	

Futurum.

<i>audiar,</i>	I will be heard	} will be heard.
<i>audiēris,</i>	thou wilt be heard	
<i>audietur,</i>	he will be heard	
<i>audiemur,</i>	we	
<i>audiemini,</i>	you	
<i>audientur,</i>	they	

Futurum exactum.

<i>auditus fuero,</i>	I shall	} have been heard.
<i>auditus fueris,</i>	thou shalt	
<i>auditus fuerit,</i>	he shall	
<i>auditi fuerimus,</i>	we shall	
<i>auditi fueritis,</i>	you shall	
<i>auditi fuerint,</i>	they shall	

Imperativus.

audire, be heard
auditor, be thou heard
auditor, let him be heard

audimini, } be ye heard
audiminor, }
audiuntor, let them be heard.

65.

Vocabulary.

Chremes, mētis, name of a man
vidēri, to appear
vidēris, thou appearest
laborare, to work
sexaginta, sixty
estne, is?
tantum, so much
curare, to meddle with
attinēre (ui), to concern
putare, to consider
usus, us, m., the custom
cruciare, to vex
lacrimare, to weep
ne, not, that not
fac, do — from: *facio, feci,*
factum, facere
secrētum, i, n., the secret
credēre (didi, dītum), to believe
reticēre (ui), to conceal

scire, 4., to know
quidem, certainly, indeed
consolari, to console
juvare (juvi, jutum), to aid
at, but
rastrum, i, n., } the mattock
pl. rastri, } the hoe
interēa, meanwhile
apponēre (posui, positum), to
 put aside
sine, let — from: *sino, sivi,*
situm, sinēre), to let, to
 allow
recreatio, ōnis, f., the recrea-
 tion
loquēre, speak — from: *lo-*
quor, locutus sum, loqui
unicus, a, um, unique
ah, ah!

imo, yes indeed, no
necne, or not
incertus, *a*, *um*, uncertain
quotidie, daily
subito, suddenly
abire (*abeo*, *ii*, *itum*), to go
 away
mensis, *is*, *m.*, the month
propediem, next day
hic, here
commodus, *a*, *um*, convenient
invitare, to invite
coena, *ae*, *f.*, the supper
convenire (*convenio*, *ēni*, *entum*), to suit
valere (*eo*, *ui*), to find oneself
bene valere, to fare well
abit, goes away
lacrima, *ae*, *f.*, the tear
si, if

excutere (*cutio*, *cussi*, *cussum*),
 to press out
domi, at home
loquitur, he speaks
peropportune, opportunely
novi, I know
novistine, dost thou know?
probe, very well
advenire (*venio*, *vēni*, *ventum*),
 to arrive
illico, at once
pueritia, *ae*, *f.*, the childhood
inde a, from — to (onwards)
familiaris, *e*, the intimate friend
nuntiare, to announce
voluptas, *ātis*, *f.*, the pleasure
ne, not (with the Imperative)
timere (*eo*, *ui*), to fear
ira, *ae*, *f.*, the anger.

Chremes, Menedēmus.

C. Menedēme, vidēris mihi nimis laborare; sane jam sexaginta annos natus es.

M. Chremes, estne tibi tantum otii, ut aliena cures, et ea, quae ad te nihil attinent?

C. Homo sum, et nihil humani a me alienum puto.

M. Mihi sic est usus.

C. Potestne homini usus esse, ut se ipse cruciet?

M. Mihi est. (Lacrimat.)

C. Ne lacrima, atque fac, ut sciam secreta tua; crede ea mihi, nec retice!

M. Scire hoc vis?

C. Hac quidem causa, ut te consolari, vel consilio et re juvare possim.

M. Dicam tibi omnia.

C. At istos rastros interea tamen appone; ne labora.

M. Minime! sine me, ne aliqua recreatio mihi sit.

C. Non sinam. Nunc loquere.

M. Filium unicum habeo; ah, quid dixi, habeo; imo habui, Chremes. Nunc habeam necne, incertum est.

C. Quid ita?

M. Scies. Quum vita filii minus contentus essem eum-
que quotidie accusarem; subito in Asiam ad Darium, Persarum
regem, abiit, et tres menses jam abest.

C. Menedeme, vos ambo accusandi estis; sed bono es
animo! Filius tuus propediem salvus hic aderit.

M. Utinam dii ita facerent!

C. Facient; nunc, si commodum est, es hodie apud me;
plures amicos invitavi ad coenam.

M. Non possum.

C. Cur non?

M. Nec possum, nec convēnit.

C. Si haec est tua sententia, Menedeme, bene vale.

M. Et tu, Chremes. (Menedemus abit.)

C. Lacrimas mihi excussit hic pater miser. Sed jam
monebo vicinum meum, ut ad coenam veniat; ibo, visam, si
domi est.

Chremes, the father — Clitipho, the son.

Chr. With whom does my son speak?

Cl. My father is here! father, thou comest very op-
portunately.

Chr. What is it?

Cl. Dost thou know this Menedemus, our neighbour?

Chr. Very well.

Cl. He has a son.

Chr. I have heard it; he is in Asia.

Cl. He is not in Asia, father; he is here.

Chr. What dost thou say?

Cl. He has arrived to day, and I have at once invited
him to supper, for he has been my most intimate friend from
childhood.

Chr. Thou announcest to me a great pleasure. Would
that Menedemus were with us to day to see his son first. It
is still time.

Cl. Do not invite him, father. My friend fears too
much the anger of his father.

Lucescere, to grow light
pulsare, to knock
ostium, ii, n., the door
reditus, us, m., the return
etsi, even if
aut, or; *aut* — *aut*, either
 — or
vulgo, generally
falsus, a, um, falsely
dies, ei, m. f., } the day
 } the time
adimere (*imo*, *emi*, *emtum*),
 to take away
aegritudo, inis, f., the sorrow
augescere, to increase
quanto, how, how much
tanto, so much
quanto — *tanto*, as much as
cupere (*cupio*, *ivi*, *itum*), to
 wish
desiderare, to miss, regret
alloqui, to address
alloquar, I will address, speak
 with
salvere, to be well
salve, be saluted
nuntius, ii, m., } the messenger
 } the news
vivere (*vivo*, *vixi*, *victum*), to
 live
apportare, to bring
num audivisti, hast thou heard
ubinam, where then?
quaeso, I beg

duc, conduct, Imp. from *dūco*,
duxi, *ductum*, *ducere*
obsecrare, to pray, entreat
fugitare, to fly
conspectus, us, m., the sight
duritia, ae, f., the severity
victus, a, um, conquered, weak
libet, it pleases
sumere (*sumo*, *sumsi*, *sum-*
tum), to take
consumere, to consume
pati, to suffer
dummodo, if only
mecum, with me
perdere (*perdo*, *didi*, *ditum*),
 to spoil
exsequi, to manage, to execute
exsequar, I will execute
natura, ae, f., the nature
comparatus, a, um, constituted
dijudicare, to judge
praepeditus, a, um, mislead
accidere, to happen
benevolus, a, um, kind, fa-
 vorable
frugālis, e, saving
obedire, to obey
senectus, ūtis, f., the age
gratias agere, to return thanks
gratia, ae, f., the thanks
adolescens, scentis, c., the
 youth
debere (*eo*, *ui*, *itum*), to be
 thankful for.

Chremes. Menedemus.

C. Lucescit jam; pulsabo ostium vicini, ut primum ex me sciat reditum filii, etsi filius non vult.

M. Aut ego natus sum ad miserias, aut illud est falsum, quod vulgo dicitur: Dies adimit aegritudinem homini-

bus. Nam mihi quidem quotidie magis aegritudo de filio augescit, et quanto diutius abest, tanto magis cupio et desidero.

C. Sed ipsum Menedemum video; ibo et alloquar. Menedeme, salve! nuntium gratissimum tibi apporto.

M. Num quid de filio meo audivisti, Chremes?

C. Valet atque vivit.

M. Ubinam est, quaeso?

C. Apud me.

M. Meus filius? meus Clinia venit?

C. Sic est, ut dixi.

M. Duc me ad eum, obsecro.

C. Non vult, ut scias reditum suum; fugitat conspectum tuum; timet antiquam tuam duritiam.

M. Non tu ei dixisti, ut essem?

C. Non.

M. Quam ob rem, Chremes?

C. Quia nec tibi, nec illi salutare est, si te tam lenem et victo animo ostendas.

M. Non possum; satis jam, satis pater durus fui. Est filius meus unicus; faciat, quod libet; sumat, consumat; volo pati, dummodo habeam illum mecum.

C. Hoc modo perdes filium. Permitte, quaeso, mihi totam rem; eam sic exsequar, ut tu ipse et filius beati sitis.

M. Fac, Chremes, ut libet. Natura omnium hominum ita est comparata, ut melius videant et dijudicent aliena, quam sua; in re nostra sumus aut nimio gaudio, aut nimia aegritudine praepediti.

Clinia, son of Menedemus.

Now, nothing more can happen to me, to give me pain, so great is my joy; my father is again kind and my friend. Chremes, my neighbour, is the originator of this joy. I will do all that this honest man has said, for I find all his advice good and salutary. My father is old; I will be saving, obey him, and live so, that the age of my father may be happy. Neighbour Chremes has always been our friend, and particularly at this time; I will go to him and thank him. If Chremes had not been, I should still be an unhappy youth and now I am the happiest of all men. For this entire happiness I am indebted to Chremes, this honest man and this true friend of my father.

Numeralia — Numerals.

I. Cardinalia

Cardinal Numbers

to the question: how many?

1. *unus, a, um, one.*
2. *duo, ae, o, two.*
3. *tres; tria.*
4. *quatuor.*
5. *quinque.*
6. *sex.*
7. *septem.*
8. *octo.*
9. *novem.*
10. *decem.*
11. *undĕcim.*
12. *duodĕcim.*
13. *tredĕcim.*
14. *quatuordecim.*
15. *quindecim.*
16. *sedecim.*
17. *septemdecim or decem et septem.*
18. *decem et octo or duodeviginti.*
19. *decem et novem or undeviginti.*
20. *viginti.*
21. *unus et viginti or viginti unus.*
22. *duo et viginti or viginti duo.*
28. *duo de triginta.*
29. *undetriginta.*
30. *triginta.*
38. *duo de quadraginta.*
39. *undequadraginta.*
40. *quadraginta.*
50. *quingenta.*
60. *sexaginta.*
70. *septuaginta.*

II. Ordinalia

Ordinal Numbers

to the question: which one?

1. *primus, a, um, the first.*
2. *secundus, a, um, the second.*
3. *tertius, a, um.*
4. *quartus.*
5. *quintus.*
6. *sextus.*
7. *septimus.*
8. *octavus.*
9. *nonus.*
10. *decimus.*
11. *undecimus.*
12. *duodecimus.*
13. *tertius decimus.*
14. *quartus decimus.*
15. *quintus decimus.*
16. *sextus decimus.*
17. *septimus decimus.*
18. *duodevicesimus.*
19. *undevicesimus.*
20. *vicesimus (vigessimus).*
21. *vicesimus primus or unus et vicesimus.*
22. *vicesimus secundus.*
28. *vicesimus octavus.*
29. *vicesimus nonus.*
30. *tricesimus.*
38. *tricesimus octavus.*
39. *tricesimus nonus.*
40. *quadragesimus.*
50. *quingagesimus.*
60. *sexagesimus.*
70. *septuagesimus.*

80. <i>octoginta.</i>	80. <i>octogesimus.</i>
90. <i>nonaginta.</i>	90. <i>nonagesimus.</i>
100. <i>centum.</i>	100. <i>centesimus.</i>
200. <i>ducenti, ae, a.</i>	200. <i>ducentesimus.</i>
300. <i>trecenti, ae, a.</i>	300. <i>trecentesimus.</i>
400. <i>quadringenti, ae, a.</i>	400. <i>quadringentesimus.</i>
500. <i>quingenti, ae, a.</i>	500. <i>quingentesimus.</i>
600. <i>sexcenti, ae, a.</i>	600. <i>sexcentesimus.</i>
700. <i>septingenti, ae, a.</i>	700. <i>septingentesimus.</i>
800. <i>octingenti, ae, a.</i>	800. <i>octingentesimus.</i>
900. <i>nongenti, ae, a.</i>	900. <i>nongentesimus.</i>
1000. <i>mille.</i>	1000. <i>millesimus.</i>
2000. <i>duo millia.</i>	2000. <i>bis millesimus.</i>

Observations.

1. The Cardinal Numbers, *unus, a, um; duo, ae, o; tres, tria*, and all from 200 to 900 are declined; *unus, a, um* has in the Gen. *unius*, Dat. *uni*, for all three Genders.

<i>duo</i>	<i>tres</i>
N. <i>duo, duae, duo</i>	N. <i>tres</i> , Neutr. <i>tria</i>
G. <i>duorum, duarum, duorum</i>	G. <i>trium</i>
D. & Abl. <i>duobus, duabus,</i> <i>duobus</i>	D. & Abl. <i>tribus</i>
A. <i>duos (duo), duas, duo.</i>	A. <i>tres</i> , Neutr. <i>tria.</i>

2. In answer to the question: how long? how large? how wide? how far? how high? etc. the Accusative is used. As: Romulus has reigned 37 years: *Romulus septem et triginta annos regnavit.* This hill is 20 feet high: *hic collis viginti pedes altus est.* This house is 50 feet long and 30 feet wide: *haec domus quinquaginta pedes longa et triginta pedes lata est.*

It has already been mentioned at No. 51, that the Ablative is used in answer to the question when? or at what time?

This man has been three years in England. Thy house is 50 feet long, 30 wide and 40 feet high. I am only 5 feet high. This ditch is 6 feet deep. The elephant is generally 10 feet long and 12 feet high. He was elected King in

his fourth year, but he died in the fifth. Many evils occurred in those times. He was born on the fourth day, the third hour. This illness lasted five years, and it only left us in the sixth. After this King had reigned well for many years, he died in the thirtieth year of his reign, in the third month of this year, on the fifth day of this month.

Conjugation of the Verb „posse“.

Infinitivus.

Praes.: *posse*, to be able.

Praeteritum: *potuisse*, to have been able.

Participium. *Praes.*: *potens*, being able.

Praesens.

Indicativus.

pos-sum, I can
pot-es, thou canst
pot-est, he can
pos-simus, we can
pot-estis, you can
pos-sunt, they can.

Conjunctivus.

pos-sim, I may be able
pos-sis, thou mayest be able
pot-sit, he may be able
pos-simus, we
pot-sitis, you
pos-sint, they } may be able.

Imperfectum.

pot-eram, I could
pot-eras, thou couldst.

pos-sem, I might be able
pos-ses, thou mightest be able.

Perfectum.

pot-ui, I have been able
pot-uisti, thou hast been able.

pot-uërim, that I have been able
pot-uëris, that thou hast been able.

Plusquamperfectum.

pot-uëram, I had been able
pot-uëras, thou hadst been able.

pot-uissem, that I had been able
pot-uisses, that thou hadst been able.

Futurum.

pot-ëro, I shall be able
pot-ëris, thou shalt be able.

Futurum exactum.

pot-uëro, I shall have been able.
pot-uëris, thou shalt have been able.

Imperativus — none.

Vocabulary.

Quivis, quaevis, quodvis, every one

opus est, it is necessary
demum, really

juvare, to give pleasure

quantum, how very

quidquid, whatever

res praecipua, the advantage

praeter, before, besides

expectare, to expect

opera, *ae*, *f.*, the trouble

commodum, *i*, *n.*, interest

postponere (*pono*, *posui*, *positum*), to put back

maledictum, *i*, *n.*, the injury

fama, *ae*, *f.*, the character

peccatum, *i*, *n.*, the error, the offence

transfere, *transtuli*, *translatum*, *ferre*, to carry over

transtulit in se, he has taken on himself

illinc, from thence

illuc, thither

illic, there, yonder

exire (*exeo*, *exii*, *exitum*), to come out

ehem, ah!

opportune, opportunely

quaerere (*quaero*, *quaesivi*, *itum*), to seek, find

gaudere, to be rejoiced

tutus, *a*, *um*, safe

in tuto, in safety

omittere (*omitto*, *missi*, *missum*), to cease from

tristitia, *ae*, *f.*, the grief

germanus, *a*, *um*, bodily

vereor, to hesitate

coram, in presence, publicly

os, *oris*, *n.*, the mouth, the face

assentari, to flatter

gratiam habere, to have gratitude

officium, *ii*, *n.*, the duty

adversus, *a*, *um*, adverse

res adversae, adverse circumstances

adjuvare (*jüvo*, *jüvi*, *jutum*), to assist

alter alterum, one another

certe, at least

qui bene facit, he who does good

ubique, whoever.

Aeschinus et Ctesipho, fratres; Syrus, servus.

Ct. A quovis homine, si opus est, beneficia accipere gratum est, verum id demum juvat, si is bene facit, qui bene facere debet. O frater, frater, quantum ego nunc te laudare debeo! sed quidquid dicam, id tamen virtus tua superat. Itaque hanc rem praecipuam habeo praeter alios homines, fratrem optimum. O Syre, ubi est Aeschinus, frater meus?

S. Te expectat domi.

Ct. Jam ad eum ibo; illius enim opera nunc vivo; ille meo commodo omnia postposuit; maledicta, malam famam et meum peccatum in se transtulit. Sed quisnam illinc exit?

S. Mane! ipse exit, frater tuus.

Ae. Ehem, opportune! te ipsum quaero, Ctesipho; gaude, omnis res est in tuto; omitte tristitiam tuam.

Ct. Ego illam omitto, quum te fratrem habeam, o Aeschine; o frater germane, vereor te coram in os laudare, ne videar magis assentari, quam tibi gratiam habere.

Ae. Omitte, frater; ne lauda, quod omnes omnibus, praecipue fratres fratribus, facere debent. Quod feci, id facere officium meum fuit. Tu eras in rebus adversis, ego poteram te adjuvare; adjuvi te. Tu idem fecisses, si ego fuisset, qui tu eras.

Brothers must love each other, and assist one another if it be necessary. The brother can assist the brother better than a stranger. If I could assist all men, it would be my greatest pleasure, for what is sweeter, than to assist others? Many people are desirous of doing good to others, but they cannot, for they are too poor. Whoever is poor, can at least assist others by advice. He who does good to us, is our friend, and we must especially love him; but we must also love our enemies, and must assist them with council and deed, wherever we can.

68.

Aptus, a, um, fitting
conveniēns, tis, suitable
fides, *fidei*, f., fidelity
liberalitas, ātis, f., liberality
constantia, ae, f., constancy
appellare, to call
praeponere (*pono*, *posui*, *positum*), to prefer
valetudo, inis, f., health
potentia, ae, f., power
honor, ōris, m., honour
cadūcus, a, um, perishable
summum bonum, the highest treasure

ponere (*pono*, *posui*, *positum*), to lay, put
ponendus, a, um, is to be placed
gignere (*gigno*, *genui*, *gentum*), to create
continere (*eo*, *ui*), to maintain
intueri, to look at
intuetur, he looks at
tamquam, as it were
exemplar, āris, the picture, the counterpart
eximere (*imo*, *ēmi*, *emtum*), to take away

stare (*sto, stēti, stātum*), to remain, to last
ne-quidem, not even
cultus, us, m., the cultivation
permanēre (*maneo, mansi, mansum*), to remain, continue
concordia, ae, f., harmony
dissensio, ōnis, f., the dissension
stabilis, e, durable
dissidium, ii, n., disunion, enmity
funditus, from the foundation
evertēre (*verto, verti, versum*), to destroy, demolish
fictus, a, um, fictitious

simulātus, a, um, put on, feigned
voluntarius, a, um, voluntary
quantus, a, um, how great
animadvertēre (*to, ti, sum*), to notice
bestia, ae, f., the animal
pullus, i, m., the young
summopere, most, dearly
evidens, Gen. *tis*, evident
multo, more (with Comp.)
etiam, still (with Comp.)
caritas, ātis, f., fondness
ob virtutem, on account of the virtue
nunquam, never
videre (*video, vīdi, visum*), to see.

Nihil est tam aptum et tam conveniens naturae humanae, quam amicitia. Sed haec tantum in bonis hominibus esse potest. Qui ita vivunt, ut eorum fidem, integritatem, liberalitatem et constantiam laudare debeamus, hos appellamus bonos viros. Fortasse nihil est melius homini a deo datum, quam amicitia. Alii praeponunt divitias, alii bonam valetudinem, alii potentiam, alii honores; sed haec omnia caduca et incerta sunt. Summum bonum ponendum est in virtute; virtus autem gignit et continet amicitiam, nec potest ullo modo amicitia esse sine virtute. Inter bonos viros autem amicitia tanta habet comoda, quanta vix possum dicere. Qui verum amicum intuetur, is intuetur tanquam aliquod exemplar sui. Si quis amicitiam ex rerum natura eximere vellet, non posset nec ulla domus, nec urbs stare; ne agri quidem cultus permaneret. Si non intelligitur, quanta sit vis amicitiae et concordiae, ex dissensionibus et discordiis intelligi potest; quae enim domus est tam stabilis, quae civitas tam firma, quae non possit odiis atque dissidiis funditus everti? ex quo judicari potest, quantum boni sit in amicitia. Est autem amicitia ex amore nominata. In ea nihil est fictum, nihil simulatum, et quidquid in ea est, id est verum et voluntarium.

The source of friendship is not advantage, but love. How great the power of this love is, can be seen by some

animals, who love their young most dearly, and who are loved most fondly by them. In men this is still more visible. How great is the fondness between parents and children, how great that between true friends? On account of virtue and honesty we love those also, whom we have never seen.

69.

Usque, until
expēdīre, to be useful
sentīre (*sentio*, *sensi*, *sensum*),
 to feel, to mean
alias — *alias*, now — now
ingravescens, being troublesome
deponēre (*pono*, *posui*, *positum*), to cast off
puerilis toga, ae, child's frock
assentatio, *ōnis*, f., flattery
perniciosus, *a*, *um*, ruinous
nocēre (*cui*), to do harm
recipēre (*recipio*, *cēpi*, *ceptum*),
 to accept
delectare, to delight
vanus, *a*, *um*, vain
testimonium, *ii*, n., the testimony
mentīre, to lie
ad mentiendum, for lying
parātus, *a*, *um*, ready
auris, *is*, f., the ear
assentator, *ōris*, m., the flatterer

patefacēre (*facio*, *feci*, *factum*),
 to open
deserēre (*desēro*, *serui*, *sertum*), to lose, to quit
insūper, besides
credūlus, *a*, *um*, credulous
certāmen, *inis*, n., the contention
existēre (*exsisto*, *exstiti*, *existum*), to originate
postulare, to demand
rectus, *a*, *um*, right
petēre (*peto*, *petivi*, *petitum*),
 to ask, to beg
causa, on account of (with the Gen.)
dum, until
rogare, to beg
cunctatio, *ōnis*, f., the hesitation
prorsus, entirely
sol, *solis*, m., the sun
molestia, *ae*, f., the molestation.

Raro amicitiae usque ad extremum vitae diem permānent. Saepe accidit, ut vel non idem utrique expediat, vel ut de republica non idem sentiant; saepe etiam mores hominum mutantur, alias adversis rebus, alias aetate ingravescente. Summi puerorum amores saepe una cum puerili toga deponuntur. Nulla autem major est pestis in amicitiis, quam pecuniae cupiditas. Ex certamine honoris et gloriae interdum maximae inimicitiae inter amicissimos existunt. Magna etiam dissidia nasci possunt, si aliquid ab amicis postulatur, quod

rectum non est. Haec sit igitur prima lex amicitiae, ut ab amicis tantum honesta petamus, et amicorum causa honesta tantum faciamus, nec exspectemus, dum rogemur. Omnis cunctatio abesse debet. Qui autem amicitiam e vita prorsus tollere volunt, non sunt audiendi; solem enim videntur e mundo tollere ii, qui amicitiam e vita tollunt; nihil melius habemus, nihil jucundius, quam amicitiam. Cura, quae est cum amicitia conjuncta, est parva. Si curam fugimus, ipsa virtus est fugienda. Ne quis igitur ob nonnullas molestias amicitiam e vita tollere velit!

Flattery is ruinous, but it can only do harm to him who accepts it. Good men do not like flattery, but many men would appear good, who are not good. Flattery delights those. A vain (false) speech appears to them a tribute of praise. That is no friendship, where the one will not hear the truth, and where the other is ready to lie (for lying). He who opens his ears to flatterers is lost. The flatterer is always our enemy. He only seeks his advantage and our money. When he has our money, and we are poor, he leaves us and blames us besides, because we have been so credulous:

Observation.

„Than“ after a Comparative is rendered either by „quam“ or the simple Ablative. As:

Water is more useful than wine:

aqua utilior est quam vinum, or: utilior vino.

This soldier is more brave than that one:

hic miles fortior est quam ille, or: fortior illo.

Nothing is better than a faithful friend:

nihil est melius quam fidelis amicus, or: melius fidei amico.

The simple Ablative must however not be used, if „than“ does not stand for a simple Nominative. As:

I require thee more than thy brother:

tui magis, quam fratris tui indigeo.

I please thee more than thy brother:

tibi magis placeo, quam fratri tuo.

This man is stronger than that one. Thou writest better than I. Africa is larger than Europe. I will give thee presents rather than to thy brother, although he is better than thou. The nights are longer in winter, than the days. This man pleases the King more than the Queen. That man is more learned, than my brother. Teeth are harder than bones. God loves honest men more than the dishonest. England is smaller than Germany. Etna is higher than Vesuvius. I love thee more than thy father. We trust (*confidimus*) thee more than thy brother.

70.

Tenēre (*teneo, ui*), to keep
aperte, openly, publicly
odisse, to hate
frons, frontis, f., the forehead, face
occultare, to hide
sententia, ae, f., the opinion
deinde, afterwards, secondly
oblātus, a, um, adduced
crimīnatio, ōnis, f., the accusation
depellēre (pello, puli, pulsum), to repel
hūc, hereto, to this
quidam, quaedam, quoddam, a certain one
sermo, ōnis, m., the speech
mediocris, e, mediocre
condimentum, i, n., the spice
quaestio, ōnis, f., the question
aliquando, sometimes, once
dignus, a, um, worthy (with the Abl.)

vetus, old. Pl. *vetēres, a tener, ēra, ērum*, young
indignus, a, um, unworthy
modius, ii, m., the bushel
sal, salis, m., the salt
simul, together
explēre (pleo, plevi, pletum), to accomplish
spes, spei, f., the hope
suo loco, in their places
dissimilitudo, inis, f., the dissimilarity
dissociare, to dissolve
improbus, a, um, bad, wicked
inesse, to be in it
quidquam, anything, something
repērire, to find
talīs, such
qualis, as, than
praestare, to render
suscipēre, to take upon one
tranquillitas, ātis, f., the tranquillity.

Amicitia, nisi inter bonos, esse non potest. Boni viri officium est, haec duo tenere in amicitia: primum, ne quid fictum sit, nec simulatum; aperte odisse melius est, quam fronte occultare sententiam; deinde, oblatas criminationes de-

pellere. Huc accedere debet suavitas quaedam sermonum et morum, haud mediocre condimentum amicitiae. Exsistit autem hoc loco quaestio, num aliquando amici novi, digni amicitia, veteribus sint praeponendi, ut solemus equis vetulis tenores praeponere. Quaestio homine indigna! Verum est illud, quod vulgo dicitur: Multi modii salis sunt simul edendi, ut munus amicitiae expleatur. Novi amici, si spem afferunt, non sunt quidem repudiandi, vetusti tamen sunt suo loco conservandi. Dissimilitudo morum dissociat amicitias; ob hanc causam boni homines amici improbis esse non possunt, nec improbi bonis. Digni autem sunt amicitia ii, in quibus ipsis inest causa, cur amentur. Rarum est illud genus hominum; sed omnia praeclara sunt rara, nec quidquam est difficilius, quam reperire, quod sit ex omni parte in suo genere perfectum.

Many men wish to have such (*eos*) friends, as (*qui*) they themselves cannot be, and demand of their friends what they themselves cannot render. Every one must first be a good man himself, and then seek for a similar one. Only such men can be real friends. Both must be just, enduring, and faithful, and the one (*alter*) must take upon him all things of the other. Neither must demand anything of the other, but (*nisi*) what is just and moral. In such a friendship is all that is desirable: morality, dignity, tranquillity of the soul, and pleasure; and where these are, life is happy, but without these it cannot be happy.

Conjugation of the Verbs „velle“, „nolle“, „malle“.

1. *Volo, volui, velle*, to will, wish.

Infinitivus.

Praes.: *velle*, to wish.

Praeter.: *voluisse*, to have wished.

Partic. Praes.: *volens*, wishing.

Praesens.

Indicativus.

<i>volo</i> ,	I will	
<i>vis</i> ,	thou wilt	
<i>vult</i> ,	he will	
<i>volumus</i> ,	we	} will.
<i>vultis</i> ,	you	
<i>volunt</i> ,	they	

Conjunctivus.

<i>velim</i> ,	I may wish	
<i>velis</i> ,	thou mayest wish	
<i>velit</i> ,	he may wish	
<i>velimus</i> ,	we	} may wish.
<i>velitis</i> ,	you	
<i>velint</i> ,	they	

*Imperfectum.**Indicativus.*

volebam, I would
volēbas, thou wouldst.

Conjunctivus.

vellem, I might wish
velles, thou mightest wish.

Perfectum.

volui, I have wished.

| *voluērim*, I may have wished.

Plusquamperfectum.

voluēram, I had wished.

| *voluissem*, I would have wished.

Futurum.

volam, I shall wish
voles, thou shalt wish
volet, he shall wish

| *volēmus*, we
voletis, you
volent, they } shall wish

Futurum exactum.

voluero, I shall have wished

voluēris, thou shalt have wished.

2. *Nolo, nolui, nolle, not to wish.**Infinitivus.*

Praes.: *nolle*, not to wish.
Praeter.: *noluisse*, not to have
wished.

| *Partic. Praes.*: *nolens*, not wish-
ing.

*Praesens.**Indicativus.*

nolo, I will not
non vis, thou wilt not
non vult, he will not
nolimus, we
non vultis, you } will not.
nolunt, they }

Conjunctivus.

nolim, I may not wish
nolis, thou mayest not wish
nolit, he may not wish
nolimus, we
nolitis, you } may not wish.
nolint, they }

Imperfectum.

nolēbam, I would not.

| *nollem*, I might not wish.

Perfectum.

nolui, I have not wished.

| *noluērim*, I may not have wished.

Plusquamperfectum.

nolueram, I had not wished.

| *noluissem*, I might not have wished.

Futurum.

<i>nolam</i> , I shall	} not wish	<i>nolēmus</i> , we	} shall not wish.
<i>nolēs</i> , thou shalt		<i>nolētis</i> , you	
<i>nolet</i> , he shall		<i>nolent</i> , they	

Futurum exactum.

noluero, I shall not have wished.

Imperativus.

<i>noli</i> , wish not	} wish not ye
<i>nolito</i> , wish not thou	
<i>nolito</i> , let him not wish	
	<i>nolite</i> , } wish not ye
	<i>nolitote</i> , } let them not wish.
	<i>nolunto</i> , }

3. Malo, malui, malle, rather to wish.**Infinitivus.**

Praes.: *malle*, to wish rather.

Praeter.: *maluisse*, to have rather wished.

Praesens.**Indicativus.**

<i>malo</i> ,	I wish rather
<i>mavis</i> ,	thou wishest rather
<i>mavult</i> ,	he wishes rather
<i>malumus</i> ,	we
<i>mavultis</i> ,	you
<i>malunt</i> ,	they

} wish rather.

Conjunctivus.

<i>malim</i> ,	I may
<i>malis</i> ,	thou mayest
<i>malit</i> ,	he may
<i>malimus</i> ,	we may
<i>malitis</i> ,	you may
<i>malint</i> ,	they may

} rather wish.

Imperfectum.

malēbam, I would rather.

| *mallem*, I might rather.

Perfectum.

malui, I have rather wished.

| *maluerim*, I may rather have wished.

Plusquamperfectum.

malueram, I had rather wished.

| *maluissem*, I might rather have wished.

Futurum.

<i>malam</i> , I shall	} rather wish	<i>malēmus</i> , we	} shall rather wish.
<i>males</i> , thou shalt		<i>malētis</i> , you	
<i>malet</i> , he shall		<i>malent</i> , they	

Futurum exactum.

maluero, I shall have rather wished.

71.

Vocabulary.

Somnus, *i*, *m.*, the sleep
lassitudo, *inis*, *f.*, fatigue
reparare, to repair
promovēre (*mōveo*, *mōvi*, *mō-*
tum), to promote
exhalatio, *ōnis*, *f.*, perspira-
 tion
quin, yes even
perfugium, *ii*, *n.*, the refuge
labor, *ōris*, *n.*, the work, the
 pain
sollicitudo, *inis*, *f.*, the af-
 fliction
aegre, with pain, with trouble
carēre (*eo*, *ui*), to be in
 want of
ultra, beyond, over
viginti, twenty
quatuor, four
exercēre (*eo*, *ui*, *itum*), to
 exercise
exercentur, they are exercised
fenestra, *ae*, *f.*, the window
cubiculum, *i*, *n.*, the room,
 bedroom
dormire, to sleep
interdū, by day
aperire (*aperio*, *erui*, *ertum*),
 to open
vapor, *ōris*, *m.*, the vapour
exeant (from *exire*), to escape
aēr, *aëris*, *m.*, the air
intromittēre (*mitto*, *misi*, *mis-*
sum), to admit

nocturnus, *a*, *um*, nightly
prodesse (*prosum*, *profui*), to
 be advantageous, useful
cubitum ire, to go to bed
mane, early
surgēre (*surgo*, *surrexi*, *sur-*
rectum), to rise
octo, eight
extrahere (*traho*, *traxi*, *tra-*
ctum), to lengthen
carbo, *ōnis*, *m.*, the coal
fornax, *ācis*, *f.*, the stove
calefactus, *a*, *um*, heated
gravis, *e*, strong, heavy
arcēre (*arceo*, *arcui*, *arcitum*),
 to withhold
conferre (*confēro*, *contūli*,
collatum), to assist
ambulatio, *ōnis*, *f.*, walking
 about
complecti (*plector*, *plexus*
sum), to embrace
obdormiscēre (*misco*, *mivi*),
 to fall asleep
connivēre (*niveo*, *nivi* or *nixi*),
 to twinkle
sensim, gradually
torpescēre, to benumb
sensus, *us*, *m.*, the sense
expergisci (*expergiscor*, *ex-*
perrectus sum), to awake
redire (*redō*, *dii*, *ditum*), to
 return
silēre (*eo*, *ui*), to be silent.

Somnus homini a natura datus est non solum ad pellen-
 dam lassitudinem reparandasque corporis vires, verum etiam
 ad promovendam exhalationem. Quin miseris et sollicitis som-
 nus perfugium est omnium laborum et sollicitudinum. Homo
 sanus aegre somno ultra viginti quatuor horas caret. Qui mul-

tis laboribus exercentur, iis longior somnus ad valetudinem necessarius est. Fenestrae cubiculorum, in quibus dormimus, interdiu aperiendae sunt, ut vapores exeant, aër purus intro-mittatur. Nocturnum tempus aptissimum est somno. Prodest etiam ante mediam noctem cubitum ire et manè surgere. Noxium est, somnum nocturnum ultra septem vel octo horas extrahere. Curandum est etiam, ut a cubiculo absit vapor carbonum aut fornacis calefactae. Odores quoque graves ar-cendi sunt. Ad somnum multum ambulatio confert. Pueros facile somnus complectitur. Qui obdormiscit, is primum con-nivet oculis, deinde sensim torpescit audiendi sensus. Qui expergiscitur, ei primum audiendi sensus, deinde oculorum usus redit.

Without sleep, no man can live. The sleep of men must neither be too long nor too short, both are dangerous. Old men do not generally sleep so well as boys. When man is asleep, all his pains and troubles are silent. Sleep is there-fore a sweet benefit for afflicted and unhappy men. When men sleep, they neither hear nor see. A sleeping man can neither see nor hear.

The Prepositions.

1. The following govern the Accusative.

ad, to, near. *Venit ad me*: he came to me. *Ad urbem*: near the town.

apud, at, with, by. *Est apud nos*: he is with us, in our house.

ante, before, since. *Ante tres dies*. *Ante pedes*.

adversus, *adversum*, against. *Meus inimicus est ad-versus me*.

cis, *citra*, on this side. *Cis fluvium*.

circa, *circum*, round, near. *Ire circa urbem*.

circiter, about, round. *Circiter meridiem*. (More in use as an Adverb „about“; *circiter tres horas* — about three hours.)

contra, against. *Tu es contra me* — thou art against me.

erga, towards. *Amor tuus erga me* — thy love towards me.

extra, out of, without, outside. *Extra urbem* — outside the town.

intra, within. *Intra urbem. Intra tres dies.*
infra, under. *Infra mensam.*
inter, between, among. *Inter homines* — among men.
juxta, near, by the side of. *Juxta urbem.*
ob, on account of. *Ob hanc rem.*
penes, with, by, in (of power). *Penes quos judicium est* —
 with whom the power is.
per, through, by. *Per urbem ire. Per me hoc factum est* —
 this has been done through me.
post, after, behind. *Post tres dies. Post me venit* — he
 comes after me.
praeter, besides. *Omnes praeter unum.*
 = past. *Praeter castra* — past the camp.
prope, near, close to. *Prope urbem.*
propter (like *ob*), on account of.
secundum, after, according to. *Secundum naturam vivere*
 — to live according to nature.
supra, over, more. *Supra me est* — he is over me. *Supra*
novem millia hominum — more than 9000 men.
trans, on the other side. *Trans fluvium.*
versus, towards. *Versus Hispaniam.*
ultra, on the other side, past — over. *Ultra fluvium.*
Ultra tres horas.

2. Prepositions with the Ablative.

A, ab, from, by. *Ab initio* — from the beginning. *Ab urbe*
abesse — to be absent from town.
absque, without (little in use).
cum, with. *Cum amico meo.*
de, of, about, from. *De ponte dejectus* — thrown from the
 bridge. *De bello loqui* — to speak of war.
e, ex, from, out of. *Ex urbe ire. Ex hoc tempore.*
prae, before, for. *Prae lacrimis* — for tears (could not speak).
pro, for, before, instead. *Pro muro* — before the wall.
Unus pro multis.
sine, without. *Sine veste* — without dress.
tenus, as far as, until. *Tauro tenus* — as far as the Taurus
 mountain.

3. Prepositions with the Accusative and Ablative.

In. With the Acc. in answer to the question whereto? in,
 to, on (like *erga* and *contra*). With the Abl.

where? in, on. *In urbem ire. Odium in malos. In urbe esse.*

sub, under. With the Acc. whereto? — with the Abl. where? *Sub terram ire. Sub terra vivere.* — Towards, with the Acc. (of time). *Sub vesperam*, towards evening.

super, over, with the Acc. With the Abl. like *de*. *Super aliquem sedere*, to sit over some one. *Super coenam*, over dinner. *Super aliqua re loqui*, to talk over something.

subter, under, generally with the Acc. whereto? and where? *Subter terram ire*, and *subter terram esse*.

72.

Vocabulary.

Confēro, contuli, collatum, conferre, to add to

janua, ae, f., the door

habitāre, to live, to reside

praeterēa, besides

rus, ruris, n., the field, the land

Acc. *rus*, to the country

excurrere (curro, curri, cursum), to go out

sub dio, in the open air

exercēre, to exercise

exercēri, to exercise oneself

assuescēre (suesco, suevi, suetum), to accustom oneself

perferre (perfēro, pertūli, perlatum), to endure

injuria, ae, f., the violence

tempestas, ātis, f., the weather

calor, ōris, m., the heat

frigus, ōris, n., the cold

pluvia, ae, f., the rain

cavēre (cāveo, cāvi, cautum), to take care

mollescere, to become effeminate

incommōdum, i, n., the inconvenience

valens, strong

agricōla, ae, m., the farmer

hortulānus, i, m., the gardener

faber, bri, m., the handicraft

nauta, ae, m., the sailor

imbecillis, e, weak

urbānus, i, m., the town man

studiōsus, a, um, devoted, studious

literae, arum, the Sciences

sanitas, ātis, f., the health

praesidium, ii, n., the preventive

temperantia, ae, f., temperance

victus, us, m., the living

sequi (sequor, secutus sum), to follow

abstinēre (eo, ui), to refrain

nimius, a, um, too much

cibus, i, m., the eating, the dish

potus, us, m., the drinking

esurire, to hunger

sitire, to thirst

contrahere (*trāho, traxi, tractum*), to contract
cruditas, ātis, f., the indigestion
dolor, ōris, m., the pain
febris, is, f., the fever
sumere (*sūmo, sumsi, sumtum*), to take
concoquere (*cōquo, coxi, coctum*), to digest
status, us, m., condition
motus, us, m., the exercise, the movement
sedēre (*sedeo, sēdi, sessum*), to sit
cubare (*cūbo, cubui, cubitum*), to lay
ambūlare, to go about
equitare, to ride

declamare, to speak
intermissio, ōnis, f., the interruption
munditia, ae, f., the cleanliness
dens, dentis, m., the tooth
defricare (*frico, fricui, frictum*), to brush
manus, us, f., the hand
sapo, ōnis, m., the soap
lavare (*lavo, lavi, lautum, or, lotum, or, lavatum*), to wash
unguis, is, m., the nail
secare (*seco, secui, sectum*), to cut
pectere (*pecto, pexi, or pexui, pexum*), to comb
purgare, to clean.

Ad bonam valetudinem multum confert, in aëre purissimo vivere. Itaque fenestrae et januae cubiculi, in quo habitamus, saepius sunt aperiendae, ne aër noxius fiat. Praeterea, qui in urbibus vivunt, saepius rus excurrere et sub dio exerceri debent. Denique curandum est, ut sensim adsuescamus perferre tempestatis injurias, calores, frigora, ventos, pluvias; cavendum saltem est, ne corpus ita mollescat, ut ne minima quidem incommoda sine periculo feramus. Videmus enim valentissimos et robustissimos homines inter agricolas, hortulanos, fabros, milites, nautas; at in imbecillum numero magnam urbanorum partem et permultos literarum studiosos. Magnum sanitatis praesidium est temperantia in victu, si quis abstinet a nimio cibo et potu. Nunquam igitur, qui diu sanus esse vult, edere debet, nisi esuriens, nec bibere, nisi sitiens. Qui nimium cibum sumit, cruditatem, capitis dolores et febres contrahit. Nullum diei tempus magis aptum est ad corpus exercendum, quam antequam sumptus aut postquam concoctus est cibus. Homo non in eodem statu aut motu diutius manere debet. Non semper est standum, sedendum, cubandum. Neque utile est semper ambulare, equitare, declamare, onera ferre, aut quidquam ejus generis sine intermissione facere.

He who wishes to be healthy, must be moderate. Cleanliness is a good preservative of health. In the morning (*mane*) the teeth must be brushed, the hands are to be washed with soap and water, the nails cut and the hair combed. The eyes are to be washed with cold water and the ears must be cleaned.

Conjugation of the Verb „ferre“.

Fero, tūli, lātum, ferre, to carry.

I. Activum.

Infinitivus.

Praes.: ferre, to carry.

Praet.: tulisse, to have carried

*Futur.: laturus, a, um esse, to
be about to carry.*

Participium.

Praes.: ferens, carrying.

*Futur.: laturus, a, um, about to
carry.*

Praesens.

Indicativus.

<i>fero,</i>	I carry	
<i>fers,</i>	thou carriest	
<i>fert,</i>	he carries	
<i>ferimus,</i>	we	} carry.
<i>fertis,</i>	you	
<i>ferunt,</i>	they	

Conjunctivus.

feram, I may carry
feras, thou mayest carry
etc. etc.

Imperfectum.

ferēbam, I carried
etc. etc.

ferrem, I might carry
ferres, thou mightest carry
etc. etc.

Perfectum.

tuli, I have carried
tulisti, thou hast carried.

tulerim, I may have carried
tuleris, thou mayest have carried.

Plusquamperfectum.

tuleram, I had carried.

tulissem, I might have carried.

Futurum.

feram, I shall carry
feres, thou shalt carry
etc. etc.

Futurum exactum.

tulero, I shall have carried
tuleris, thou shalt have carried
etc. etc.

Imperativus.

fer, carry
*fer**to*, carry thou
*fer**to*, let him carry.

*fer**te*,
*fer**tote*, } carry ye
*fer**unto*, let them carry.

II. Passivum.

Infinitivus.

Praes.: *ferri*, to be carried.
Praet.: *latus, a, um esse*, to
 have been carried.
Futur.: *latum iri*, to be about to
 be carried.

Participium.

Praes.: *latus, a, um*, carried.
Gerund.: *ferendus, a, um*, to be
 carried.

Praesens.

Indicativus.

feror, I am carried
feris, thou art carried
*fer**tur*, he is carried
ferimur, we
ferimini, you } are carried.
feruntur, they }

Conjunctivus.

ferar, I may be carried
feraris, thou mayest be carried
 etc. etc.

Imperfectum.

ferēbar, I was carried
 etc. etc.

ferrer, I might be carried
ferreris, thou mightest be carried
 etc. etc.

Perfectum.

latus, a, um sum, I have been
 carried.

latus, a, um sim, I may have been
 carried.

Plusquamperfectum.

latus, a, um eram, I had been
 carried.

latus, a, um essem, I might have
 been carried.

Futurum.

ferar, I shall be carried
fereris, thou shalt be carried.

Futurum ewactum.

latus, a, um fuero (ero), I shall
 have been carried.

Imperativus.

ferre, be carried
*fer**tor*, be thou carried
*fer**tor*, let him be carried

ferimini,
feriminor, } let ye be carried
feruntor, let them be carried.

73.

Vocabulary.

In proverbium abire, to become a saying
admōdum, very
opulens, Gen. *tis*, rich
dicitur, it is said
ornatus, *us*, m., the ornament
regius, *a*, *um*, regal
quaerere (*quaero*, *quaesivi*, *quaesitum*), *ab*, *ex aliquo*, to ask some one
ingenue, candidly, openly
contingere (*contingit*, *contigit*), to succeed
nepos, *ōtis*, m., the grandson
superstes, *itis*, outliving
denuo, again
existimare, to consider
Argivus, *a*, *um*, from the town of Argos in Greece
sacerdos, *ōtis*, m. f., the priest, priestess
solemnis, *e*, solemn
status, *a*, *um*, fixed
sacrificium, *ii*, n., the sacrifice
currus, *us*, m., the carriage
vehere (*veho*, *vexi*, *vectum*), to drive; *vehendus sum*, I must be driven
longe, far

jumentum, *i*, n., the cattle for draught
jugum, *i*, n., the harness
accedere (*cedo*, *cessi*, *cessum*), to come near, to resort
precari, to pray, to beg
pietas, *ātis*, f., the filial love
praemium, *ii*, n., the reward
epulari, to dine
dare (*do*, *dedi*, *dātum*), to give; *se dare*, to give over
invenire (*invenio*, *vēni*, *ventum*), to find
postremum, lastly
inquit, said
habēre (*eo*, *ui*, *itum*), have, to hold
rogus, *i*, m., the funeral pile
stare (*sto*, *steti*, *statum*), to stand
ut (with the Conjunct.), that
cremare, to burn
exclamāre, to exclaim
semel, once
saepius, often
narrare, to tell
concedere (*cedo*, *cessi*, *cessum*), to present.

Croesus ultimus rex Lydorum fuit. Opes ac divitiae ejus tantae fuerunt, ut in proverbium abierint. Si quis admōdum opulens est, Croesum divitiis superare, vel Croesus esse dicitur. Ad hunc venit Solon Atheniensis, vir sapientissimus. Rex ostendit ei omnes divitias ornatumque regium, et quaesivit ab eo, num vidisset hominem, qui esset omnium beatissimus. Solon ingenue respondit: Neminem vidi beatiorē, quam Telum Atheniensem. Hic enim, etsi pauper, tamen fuit felicissimus, quia ei contigit, quum filii ac nepotes superstitēs essent, in proelio pro patria mori. Croesus denuo interrogavit,

quem post Tellum existimaret beatissimum. Solon respondit: Cleobin et Bitōnem. Hi filii fuerunt sacerdotis Argivae. Quum enim mater eorum ad solemne et statum sacrificium curru vehenda esset, satis longe ab oppido ad fanum, et jumenta abessent, ad jugum juvenes accesserunt. Ita sacerdos vecta est in fanum a filiis. Tum mater dicitur a dea precata esse, ut filiis daret pro pietate maximum praemium, quod homini dari posset a deo. Adolescentes igitur, epulati cum matre, somno se dederunt, et mane mortui inventi sunt. Quum Croesus saepius et postremum etiam de se interrogaret, Solon, Nemo, inquit, ante mortem beatus haberi potest.

Croesus, defeated by Cyrus, the King of Persia, already standing on the funeral pile, to be burned, called once and more the name of Solon. Cyrus hearing this, asked why he did it. Croesus told him all that Solon had once told him. Cyrus granted him his life.

74.

Adolescere (*adolēvi*), to grow up
fari, to speak
mutus, *a*, *um*, dumb
elinguis, *e*, speechless
eductus, *a*, *um*, drawn out
gladius, *ii*, *m.*, the sword
invadere (*invāsi*, *sum*), to attack
ignorāre, not to know
diducere (*duxi*, *ductum*), to
 separate
clamare, to call
nisus, *us*, *m.*, the effort
impetus, *us*, *m.*, the violence
rumpere (*rupi*, *ruptum*), to tear
vitium, *ii*, *n.*, the fault
nodus, *i*, *m.*, the band, knot

lingua, *ae*, *f.*, the tongue
reducere (*duxi*, *ductum*), to
 draw back
incipere (*incipio*, *cēpi*, *ceptum*),
 to begin
certamen, *inis*, *n.*, the dispute
sortitio, *ōnis*, *f.*, the signal
adversarius, *i*, *m.*, the ad-
 versary
repente, all at once
subjicere (*subjicio*, *jēci*, *je-*
ctum), to substitute
solvere (*solvo*, *solvi*, *solūtum*),
 to free
narratio, *ōnis*, *f.*, the tale
anxietas, *ātis*, *f.*, the anxiety.

Croesi filius, quum jam adolevisset, nihil poterat fari. Diu igitur mutus et elinguis habitus est. Quum pater ejus victus esset, et miles quidam eum educto gladio invaderet, quia regem ignorabat, adolescens os diduxit, ut clamaret, quo nisu

atque impetu vitium nodumque linguae rupit; clamavit enim subito: Ne regem occide. Tum hostis gladium reduxit; vita regis salva fuit, et adolescens postea incepit loqui. Simile quiddam de Samio quodam narratur, cui nomen fuit Aegles. Is quum antea fari non potuisset, simili causa loqui incepisse dicitur. Nam quum in quodam certamine sortitio inter ipsum et adversarios non bona fide fieret, repente magna voce clamavit in eum, qui falsam sortem subiciebat. Sic vinculo oris solutus, per omne vitae tempus distincte locutus est.

It is said that the son of Croesus was dumb from childhood. He had to thank the enemy for his speech. The enemy would have killed his father if the son had not called out: do not kill King Croesus. The exertion of the youth was so great that he tore the band of his tongue. This exertion saved the life of the father, and gave speech to the son. Whether this tale be true is not certain. Several tales of this kind are narrated.

75.

Scythae, people of south eastern Europe

bellum alicui inferre, to bring war on someone

muliebriter, effeminate

terrere (*eo, ui, itum*), to frighten

adventus, *us*, *m.*, the arrival

permittere (*misi, missum*), to allow

transire (*transeo, ii, itum*), to go over

prohibere (*eo, ui, itum*), to prevent

committere proelium, to fight a battle

trucidare, to kill

ducenti, ae, a, two hundred

memorabilis, e, memorable

superesse, to be left

amputare, to amputate

uter, utris, m., leather bag

sanguis, inis, m., the blood

repletus, a, um, filled

conjicere (*jicio, jeci, jectum*), to throw

addere (*additi, itum*), to add

satiare, to satisfy

insatiabilis, e, insatiable

triginta, thirty

legere (*legi, lectum*), to read

scribere (*scripsi, scriptum*), to write

facile, easily

amore amplectimur, we conceive an affection for

quam pulchre, how beautiful

cupere (*io, iui, itum*), to wish

fictus, a, um, fictitious

germanus, a, um, own, bodily.

Cyrus, Croesi victor, ipse a Scythis victus et occisus est. Quum Cyrus Scythis bellum inferret, eorum regina erat Tomyris. Haec non muliebriter territa est adventu hostium, sed eos permisit transire flumen, quamquam prohibere poterat. Quum proelium commissum esset, Cyrus victus est. Scythae ducenta Persarum millia cum ipso rege trucidaverunt. In hac victoria etiam illud fuit memorabile, quod ne nuntius quidem tantae cladis superfuit. Caput Cyri amputatum et in utrem, humano sanguine repletum, conjectum est, et regina haec verba addidit: *Satia te sanguine, quem sitisti, cujusque insatiabilis semper fuisti.* Cyrus triginta annos regnaverat.

If we read the life of Cyrus, which Xenophon wrote, we easily conceive an affection for this King. How beautifully he speaks to his sons of virtue, and of the life after death! We wish that the life of Cyrus, written by Xenophon, were the true one. But this life is very fabulous, and not the real one. If this life had been true, Cambyses, the son of Cyrus, would not certainly have been so cruel as he was. This cruel King killed his own brother.

Observation.

The Conjunction *cum* or *quum* governs the Conjunctivus when it has the meaning of *as*, *because*, although (stating the reason why); it governs the Indicativus if it denotes the time: *when*, *at the time of*, *whilst*. — With the Imperfectum and Plusquamperfectum it governs the Conjunctivus, as:

Recte agere debemus, cum Deus sic jubeat,

We must act rightly as God demands it so.

Cum omnia habeam, unum tamen deest, amicus fidelis,

Although I have everything, yet one thing I want, a true friend.

Cum Caesar in Galliam venit, principes Gallorum erant Aedui.

At the time when Caesar went to Gallia, the Aedui were the first amongst the Gauls.

Cum inimici nostri venient, rus ibimus,

When our enemies come, we will go into the country.

Cum scribis, non cogitas,

Whilst thou writest, thou dost not think.

As thou hast invited¹ me, I have come. When the Romans began² a war, they announced³ it before hand. Thou must be diligent as God demands it. When Tullius Hostilius was⁴ King, the Romans carried on⁵ many wars. We must act justly, as God and the laws, demand. When the enemy is coming into our country, we will go to meet him⁶. Socrates was indeed⁷ an honest⁸ man, as he instructed⁹ so many excellent¹⁰ pupils. When he came home¹¹ from the forum¹², his wife Xantippe used¹³ to blame him because he did not remain¹⁴ at home¹⁵. When Romulus was King, he ordered that the citizens should steal¹⁶ Sabine girls¹⁷, because they had no wives. As the matter stands thus¹⁸, I will not blame thee.

- 1 invitāre. 2 incipere (io, ēpi, eptum). 3 indicere (co, xi, etum). 4 factus sum. 5 gerere (gessi, gestum). 6 obviam ibimus. 7 profecto. 8 honestus, a, um. 9 instituere (ui, ūtum). 10 egregius, a, um. 11 domum. 12 forum, i. 13 solebat. 14 manere (mansi, mansum). 15 domi. 16 rapere (pio, pui, ptum). 17 Sabine virginēs. 18 se habet.

76.

Vocabulary.

Succedere (cessi, cessum), to
succeed in reigning
adjicere (jicio, jēci, jectum),
to add

offensus, a, um, offended
superstitio, ōnis, f., superstition

exterritus, a, um, terrified
quomodo, how?

parcere (peperci, parctum),
to spare

fratri parcere, to spare the
brother

saevire, to rage

interim, in the meantime

ministerium, ii, n., the service
deligere (legi, lectum), to choose

quippe, for, namely

vagina, ae, f., the sheath

elapsus, a, um, fell out
elabi (elapsus sum), to fall out
graviter, heavy

vulnerare, to wound
femur, ōris, n., the hip
accipere (cipio, cēpi, ceptum),
to receive

sentire (sensi, sensum), to
mark

dolus, i, m., the trick
species, iēi, f., the pretence
Majestas, ātis, f., Majesty
occultare, to hide, conceal
minister, tri, m., the servant
studere (ui), to study, take
trouble

favor, ōris, m., favour

conciliare, to acquire

tributum, i, n., the tax

vacatio, ōnis, f., the discharge
permittere (misi, missum), to
 grant
triennium, ii, n., three years
in, for
indulgentia, ae, f., the indul-
 gence
largitio, ōnis, f., the presen-
 tation
detegere (texi, tectum), to
 discover
eligere (lēgi, lectum), to elect
conjuratus, i, m., the jurymen
nobilitas, ātis, f., nobleness
par, Gen. paris, equal
difficilis, e, difficult

via, ae, f., the outlet, method
invenire (veni, ventum), to find,
 to decide
pacisci (pactus sum), to make
 the agreement
inter se, amongst themselves
constitutus, a, um, certain
regia, ae, f., the royal palace
inter, between, among
ortus, us, m., the rise
hinnire, to neigh
moderatio, ōnis, f., the mo-
 deration
desilire (siliī or silui, sultum),
 to spring down
salūtare, to salute.

Cyros successit Cambyses filius, qui imperio patris Aegyptum adjecit; sed offensus superstitionibus Aegyptiorum diruit deorum aedes. Post haec vidit in somno fratrem suum, Mergim, regem futurum. Exterritus somnio fratrem occidit. Nam quomodo fratri parceret, quum adversus religionem et deos saeviret? Ad hoc tam crudele ministerium delegit quendam ex amicis, nomine Comētem. Interim ipse prius mortuus est. Quippe gladius e vagina elapsus graviter eum vulneraverat in femore. Quum Comētes nuntium de morte regis accepisset, statim Mergim occidit, et suum fratrem subjecit Oropastam. Is enim persimilis erat Cambysis fratri et vultu et corpore. Nemo sensit dolum. Hoc facile fieri poterat apud Persas, ubi persona regis sub specie majestatis occultabatur. Rex Oropasta et ministri ejus omni modo populi favorem sibi conciliare studebant; tributis et militiae vacationem in triennium mittebant, ut regnum, quod quaesiverant fraude, indulgentia et largitionibus confirmarent. Sed tandem res detecta et rex occisus est. Darius, Hystaspis filius, rex electus est.

The jurymen, who killed the wicked King, were so equal in virtue and nobleness, that (*ut* with the *Conjunct.*) it was difficult to elect a new King. The jurymen decided on a method. They made an agreement amongst themselves, that (*ut* with *Conj.*) they should all lead their horses on a certain day in the morning, before the royal Palace, and that he

should be King, whose horse should neigh first at sunrise, for the Sun is the only God amongst the Persians, and horses are dedicated to this God. Among the jurymen was Darius, son of Hystaspes, his horse neighed first, and thus he was King. The moderation of the others was so great, that they at once jumped from their horses and saluted Darius as their King.

Deponentia.

A „Depōnens“ is a Verb which has a passive form and an active signification.

1. *Hortor, hortatus sum, hortari*, to admonish.
2. *Vereor, veritus sum, verēri*, to avoid, shun.

Infinitivus.

<i>Praes.</i> : <i>hortari</i> , to admonish.	<i>vereri</i> , to avoid.
<i>Praet.</i> : <i>hortatus, a, um esse</i> , to have admonished.	<i>veritus, a, um esse</i> .
<i>Futur.</i> : <i>hortaturus, a, um esse</i> , to be about to admonish.	<i>veriturus, a, um esse</i> .

Participium.

<i>Praes.</i> : <i>hortans</i> , admonishing.	<i>verens</i> , avoiding.
<i>Praet.</i> : <i>hortatus, a, um</i> , having admonished.	<i>veritus, a, um</i> .
<i>Futur.</i> : <i>hortaturus, a, um</i> , about to admonish.	<i>veriturus, a, um</i> .

Gerundium.

<i>hortandus, a, um</i> , to be admonished.	<i>verendus, a, um</i> , to be avoided.
Gen. <i>hortandi</i> , of admonishing.	<i>verendi</i> .
<i>Supin.</i> : <i>hortatum</i> , } to admonish.	<i>veritum</i> .
<i>hortatu</i> , }	<i>veritu</i> .

Praesens.

Indicat.	Conjunct.	Indicat.	Conjunct.
<i>hortor</i> , I admonish.	<i>horter</i> , I may admonish.	<i>vereor</i> , I avoid.	<i>verear</i> , I may avoid.

Imperfectum.

<i>hortabar</i> , I admonished.	<i>hortarer</i> , I might adm.	<i>verebar</i> , I avoided.	<i>vererer</i> , I might avoid.
------------------------------------	-----------------------------------	--------------------------------	------------------------------------

Perfectum.

Indicat.	Conjunct.	Indicat.	Conjunct.
<i>hortatus sum,</i> I have admonished	<i>hortatus sim,</i> that I may h. adm.	<i>veritus sum,</i> I have avoided.	<i>veritus sim,</i> that I may have av.

Plusquamperfectum.

<i>hortatus eram.</i>	<i>hortatus essem.</i>	<i>veritus eram.</i>	<i>veritus essem.</i>
-----------------------	------------------------	----------------------	-----------------------

Futurum.

<i>hortabor,</i> I shall admonish.	<i>verabor,</i> I shall avoid.
------------------------------------	--------------------------------

Futurum exactum.

<i>hortatus fuero (ero),</i> I shall have admonished.	<i>veritus fuero (ero),</i> I shall have avoided.
--	--

Imperativus.

<i>hortare,</i> admonish	<i>verere,</i> avoid
<i>hortator,</i> admonish thou.	<i>veritor,</i> avoid thou.

3. *Queror, questus sum, quēri,* to complain.

4. *Partior, partitus sum, partīri,* to divide.

Infinitivus.

<i>Praes.: queri,</i> to complain.	<i>partiri,</i> to divide.
<i>Praet.: questus, a, um esse,</i> to have complained.	<i>partitus, a, um esse,</i> to have divided.
<i>Futur.: questurus, a, um esse,</i> to be about to complain.	<i>partiturus, a, um esse,</i> to be about to divide.

Participium.

<i>Praes.: querens,</i> complaining.	<i>partiens,</i> dividing.
<i>Praet.: questus, a, um,</i> having complained.	<i>partitus, a, um,</i> having divided.
<i>Futur.: questurus, a, um,</i> about to complain.	<i>partiturus, a, um,</i> about to divide.

Gerundium.

<i>querendus, a, um,</i> to be complained of.	<i>partiendus, a, um,</i> to be divided.
<i>Gen. querendi,</i> of complaining.	<i>partiendi,</i> of dividing.
<i>Supin.: questum,</i> } to complain.	<i>partitum,</i> } to divide.
<i>questu,</i>	<i>partitu,</i>

Praesens.

Indicat.	Conjunct.	Indicat.	Conjunct.
<i>queror</i> , I complain <i>quereris</i> , <i>queritur</i> .	<i>querar</i> , I may complain.	<i>partior</i> , I divide.	<i>partiar</i> , I may divide.

Imperfectum.

<i>querebar</i> , I complained.	<i>quererer</i> , I might complain.	<i>partiebar</i> , I divided.	<i>partirer</i> , I might divide.
------------------------------------	--	----------------------------------	--------------------------------------

Perfectum.

<i>questus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> <i>sum</i> , I have complained.	<i>questus sim</i> , that I may have complained.	<i>partitus sum</i> , I have divided.	<i>partitus sim</i> , that I may have divided.
---	--	--	--

Plusquamperfectum.

<i>questus eram</i> , I had complained.	<i>questus essem</i> , that I might have complained.	<i>partitus eram</i> , I had divided.	<i>partitus essem</i> , that I might have divided.
--	--	--	--

Futurum.

<i>querar</i> , I shall complain.	<i>partiar</i> , I shall divide.
-----------------------------------	----------------------------------

Futurum exactum.

<i>questus fuero (ero)</i> , I shall have complained.	<i>partitus fuero (ero)</i> , I shall have divided.
--	--

Imperativus.

<i>querere</i> , complain <i>queritor</i> , complain thou.	<i>partire</i> , divide <i>partitor</i> , divide thou.
---	---

77.

Vocabulary.

Egregius, *a*, *um*, distinguished
cognatio, *ōnis*, f.; the relation-
ship

pristinus, *a*, *um*, formerly
principium, *i*, n., the beginning
recipere (*cipio*, *cēpi*, *ceptum*),
to take

matrimonium, *ii*, n., the mar-
riage

nuptiae, *arum*, f., union, mar-
riage

extraneus, *a*, *um*, foreign
transfero (*transtūli*, *trans-*
latum, *transferre*), to
transfer

desciscere (*descivi*), to revolt
occūpare, to capture

expugnatio, *ōnis*, f., the conquest

lacerare, to tear

nasus, i, m., the nose

labium, ii, n., the lip

praecidere (*cīdi*, *cīsum*), to cut off

foedus, a, *ūm*, horrible

laceratio, *ōnis*, f., the mutilation

quaerere (*quaesivi*, *ītum*), demand (after something)

intrare, to enter

redigere (*redēgi*, *redactum*), to bring back

potestas, *ātis*, f., the power

quidem, certainly

sed, but

mutilātus, a, *um*, mutilated

commiseratio, *ōnis*, f., the commiseration

adspicere (*spexi*, *spectrum*), to look at

permittere (*mīsi*, *missum*), to consent.

Novo regi non solum erat forma et virtus egregia, sed etiam cognatio cum pristinis regibus. Principio regni in matrimonium Cyri regis filiam recepit, ut his nuptiis regnum firmaret. Sic regnum non tam in extraneum translatus, quam in familiam Cyri reversum est. Quondam Assyrii desciverant, et urbem Babylonem occupaverant. Expugnatio hujus urbis erat difficillima. Tandem, quum Darius urbem expugnare non posset, Zopyrus toto se corpore laceravit; nasum, aures et labia sibi praecidit. Quum Darius Zopyrum sic laceratum videret, causam et auctorem tam foedae lacerationis quaesivit. Tum Zopyrus, Ipse feci, inquit, ut tu Babylonem capere posses. Zopyrus igitur intravit in urbem, ibique populo corpus laceratum ostendit, et dixit: Darius rex est crudelissimus; videte, quomodo me laceraverit is, qui me non virtute, sed hincitu equi sui superavit. Urbis incolae crediderunt ei. Sic Zopyrus dux est Babyloniorum factus. Tandem et incolas et urbem redegit in potestatem regis Darii.

Zopyrus was a faithful friend of King Darius, but very cruel towards himself. What can be more cruel than to cut one's nose, ears, and lips? And all this he did that the King might conquer a town. King Darius certainly took the city, but Zopyrus was a mutilated man, without nose, ears and lips. Darius himself could not look at Zopyrus without commiseration. If Zopyrus had previously asked Darius, he would not have consented to this horrible mutilation.

Postrēmo, at last
convertere (*ti, sum*), to turn
 against
placēre (*ui, itum*), to please
orīgo, gēnis, f., the origin
solum, i, n., the soil
incolere (*colui, cultum*), to in-
 habit
docēre (*docui, doctum*), to teach
lanificium, ii, n., the spinning
 of wool
oleum, i, n., the oil
arare, to plough
monstrare, to show, teach
serere (*sēvi, sātum*), to sow
frumentum, i, n., the corn
litera, ae, f., the letter
literae, the sciences
facundia, ae, f., the eloquence
certe, at least
regio, ōnis, f., the country, part
Amphictyon, ōnis
absūmere (*sumsi, sumtum*), to
 take away

illuvies, iēi, f., the flood
serecipere (*cipio, cēpi, ceptum*),
 to retire
propterea, therefore
satio, ōnis, f., the sowing
reperire (*reperi, repertum*),
 to invent
auxilium ferre, to render as-
 sistance
similitudo, inis, f., the simi-
 larity
diluvium, ii, n., the deluge
Noāchus, i, Noah
navis, is, f., the ship
construere (*uxi, uctum*), to
 build
lapis, idis, m., the stone
post tergum, behind them
jacere (*jacio, jēci, jactum*), to
 throw
denuo, again
facti sunt, have become.

Darius multis populis bellum intulit, et postremo omnem belli impetum in Athenienses convertit. Sed quoniam ad bella Atheniensium venimus, placet hoc loco originem urbis narrare. Non advēnae urbi originem dederunt, sed homines in eodem solo nati, quod incolebant; quae sedes illis fuit, eādem fuit origo. Athenarum incolae primi lanificii, olei, vini usum docuerunt. Arare quoque monstraverunt, et frumenta serere. Literae certe ac facundia Athenas veluti templum habent. Ante Deucaliōnis tempora rex iis fuit Cecrops. Huic successit Cranaūs, cujus filia Atthis regioni nomen dedit. Post hunc Amphictyon regnavit, qui primus urbem Minervae sacravit. Hujus regis temporibus aquarum illuvies majorem Graeciae populorum partem absumpsit. Superfuerunt tantum, qui in montes se receperant, aut ad Deucalionem Thessaliae regem. Ab hoc rege propterea genus hominum denuo conditum esse dicitur. Per successionis ordinem deinde ad Erechthēum regnum venit, sub

quo frumenti satio a Triptolēmo reperta est. Postea rex fuit Aegeus, Thesēi pater, et post eum Theseus, et Thesēi filius, qui Graecis adversus Trojanos auxilium tulit. Ultimus Atheniensium rex fuit Codrus.

The inundation at the time of Deucalion has a great similarity with the deluge of Noah. Deucalion as well as Noah built a vessel and saved himself with few men. But in the history of Deucalion much is very fabulous. He and his wife are said to have thrown stones behind them, that (ut with the Conj.) a new human race might again be founded. These stones became men; but these new men were hard and cruel.

Observation.

Ut when translated by so that, that, takes the Conjunctive, when translated by: as, when, as soon as, after, the Indicative. As:

donavit milites pecunia, ut fortiter pugnarent,
he gave the soldiers money, that they might valiantly fight.

Caesar ut vidit hostem, vicit,
As soon as Caesar saw the enemy, he conquered it.

The number ¹ of stars ² is so great that they cannot be counted ³. This I have done that thou mayest be pleased ⁴. When I saw him, I embraced ⁵ him. The morals of many men are so bad, that we can scarcely ⁶ take ⁷ them for men. The cold ⁸ of this country is so great, that neither men nor beasts can live in it. I have done it so as thou hadst ordered ⁹ it. When I came into the town I looked ¹⁰ at the many splendid ¹¹ buildings, that I might have something to tell ¹² thee. Many praise other people, that they may be praised by them. God is so powerful that he can do ¹³ all things. When I come to him I find ¹⁴ him so sad ¹⁵ that he can not be pleased at all ¹⁶. The judges ¹⁷ of Socrates were so unjust that they condemned ¹⁸ him. This I have done, that thou shouldst not be ¹⁹ grieved. The fear ²⁰ that the enemy will come, is very great with us.

1 copia, ac. 2 stella, ac. 3 numerare. 4 lactari. 5 amplector, plexus sum, plecti. 6 vix. 7 habere; for men: hominum loco.

8 frigus, ōris. 9 jubēre (jussi, jussum). 10 contemplari.
 11 magnificus, a, um. 12 quod tibi narrarem. 13 efficio (ēci,
 ectum, icēre). 14 invenio (veni, ventum, venire). 15 tristis, e.
 16 prorsus. 17 judex, icis. 18 condemnare. 19 fio, factus sum,
 fiēri. 20 metus, us.

Conjugation of the Verb „fieri“.

Fio, factus sum, fiēri, to become.

Infinitivus.

Praes.: fiēri, to become.

Praet.: factus, a, um esse, to have become.

Futur.: factum iri, to be about to become.

Participium.

Praet.: factus, a, um, become.

Praesens.

Indicativus.

fio, I become
fis, thou becomest.

Conjunctivus.

fiam, I may become.
fias, thou mayest become.

after the 4th Conjugation.

Imperfectum.

fiēbam, I became. | *fiērem, I might become.*

Perfectum.

factus sum, I have become. | *factus sim, I may have become.*

Plusquamperfectum.

factus eram, I had become. | *factus essem, I might have become.*

Futurum.

fiam, I shall become
fies, thou shalt become
fiet, he shall become.

Futurum exactum.

factus ero, I shall have become.

Imperativus.

fi, become — fite, become ye.

79.

Vocabulary.

Facinus, ōris, n., the deed
edere, to make known
facinus edere, to perform an action

auctus, a, um, magnified
augēre (auxi, auctum), to magnify

iter, itineris, the road, journey
infestus, a, um, dangerous, infested

hospes, itis, the guest
lectus, i, m., the bed
propōnere (posui, positum), to place before

supereminens, tis, overhanging
extendere (di, tum, sum), to extend
aequare, to equal [extend
longitūdo, inis, f., the length
interficere (ficio, feci, fectum), to kill

evadēre (si, sum), to come out

victor, ōris, m., the conqueror
victus, a, um, conquered
imponēre (posui, positum), to impose

vectigal, ālis, n., the tax
instituēre (tui, tutum), to institute, to fix

quotannis, yearly
totidem, as much as
monstrum, i, n., the monster
bubulus, a, um, of the ox
caput bubulum, the head of the ox

labyrinthus, i, m., the labyrinth
inextricabilis, e, inextricable
includēre (si, sum), to include
praecipitāre, 1., to precipitate, to throw into

metuere (ui), to fear; I fear that
 — *metuo, ne* (with the Conj.)
quadraginta, forty.

Theseus, Aegēi filius, Atheniensis fuit. Is multa clara facinōra edīdit, sed haec facinora valde aucta sunt fabulosis narrationibus. Erat illo tempore iter ex Peloponneso infestum propter multos latrones. Ex eo numero erat Procrustes, qui hominum crudelissimus fuisse dicitur. Si quis hospes ad eum venerat, longior quam lectus, qui ei proponebatur, praecidebat partem supereminentem corporis; sin corpus hospitis brevius erat, extendebat, dum lecti longitudinem aequaret. Hunc Theseus interfecit. Eodem tempore Minos in Creta insula regnabat. Is bello, quod cum Atheniensibus gesserat, victor evaserat victisque durissimum vectigal imposuerat. Instituerat enim, ut Athenienses septem quotannis adolescentes totidemque virgines Minotauro ad epulandum mitterent. Minotaurus autem monstrum fuisse dicitur, cui caput erat bubulum, pars autem inferior humana. Huic monstro Daedalus Labyrinthum fecerat inextricabili exitu, in quo erat inclusus. Hunc Theseus interfecit, sed non perfecisset, nisi Ariadne, regis filia, auxilium ei tulisset. Theseus postea a Lycomēde in mare praecipitatus est.

Theseus was one of the most celebrated Kings of Athens. Many fabulous things are recorded of this King. His father was Egeus. He threw himself into the sea, which is therefore called the Egean sea. Egeus feared that his son Theseus had been killed by the Minotaur. If the truth had been known to this King, he would not have thrown himself into the sea. He conducted the government of Athens for forty years.

80.

Insidiari, 1., to engage, waylay
arma, orum, the arms
blandus, a, um, flattering
insidiōsus, a, um, insidious
promittere (misi, missum), to promise
praestare (praestiti, praestitum), to keep
aperte, openly, sincerely
ars, artis, f., the art
decipere (cipio, cepi, ceptum), to deceive
palam, openly, publicly
fundere (fudi, fusum), to beat
dissimulāre, 1., to conceal
dilatatio, ōnis, f., the delay
modus, i, m., the measure
ultio, ōnis, the revenge
avidus, a, um, eager
ebrietas, ātis, f., the intoxication
metuere (ui), to fear
frugalitas, ātis, f., the moderation

luxuria, ae, f., the revelry, luxury
deditus, a, um, addicted
jacere (jacio, jeci, jactum), to throw
 — *fundamentum*, to lay the foundation
orbis, is, m., the circle of the earth
consummare, 1., to finish
aggređi (aggređior, aggređsus, sum), to attack
persequi (persequor, persecutus sum), to follow out
requirere (quisivi, quisitum), to demand
iterum, again, for the second time
tertium, for the third time
postremum, at last, finally
pugna, ae, f., the battle
amnis, is, m., the river
stupefactus, a, um, surprised
benignitas, ātis, f., the goodness
motus, a, um, moved.

Bella, quae Athenienses contra Lacedaemonios gesserunt, utrorumque fuerunt exitium. Philippus, Macedoniae rex, utrisque insidiatus est. Fuit hic rex belli studiosissimus. Nulla ei vincendi ratio turpis fuit. Erat aequae blandus atque insidiosus; promittebat plura, quam praestabat. Amicitias colebat utilitate, non fide. Huic Alexander filius successit, virtute et

vitiis major, quam pater. Itaque vincendi ratio utrique erat diversa. Alexander aperte agebat, Philippus cum dolo. Pater iram dissimulabat; in filio nec dilatio, nec modus ultionis erat. Uterque nimis avidus erat vini; sed ebrietatis vitia in utroque erant diversa. Pater amari malebat, filius metui. Ille frugalitati, hic luxuriæ magis deditus erat. His artibus pater fundamenta jecit imperii orbis, filius totum opus consummavit. Hic post patris mortem Persas bello aggressus est. Rex Persarum erat Darius Codomannus. Hunc Alexander bello persequi voluit, quod a patre suo Philippo tributum requisiverat. In prima pugna ad Granicum amnem Darii exercitum vicit Alexander. Iterum atque tertium victus Persarum rex, postremo a Besso multis vulneribus occisus est. Hunc Alexander mox cepit et justa morte punivit. Quippe hic Bessus non erat Graecus et Alexandri amicus, sed Persarum dux et cui maximam fidem habuerat Darius.

Alexander, King of Macedonia, was very gentle and kind towards the consort and daughters of Darius. They were prisoners of Alexander and much feared the cruelty of this King. They were however much astonished to find Alexander so gentle and kind. When Darius heard of this kindness of Alexander, he was much moved, and sent a letter to Alexander, in which he thanked him much for his kindness, and begged that he would become his friend. Alexander, who had been so kind towards the wife and daughters of Darius, was very severe towards Darius himself.

81.

Indus, *i*, *m.*, the Indian
regulus, *i*, *m.*, a little (small)
King

littus, *littōris*, *n.*, the shore
oceānus, *i*, *m.*, the ocean
revertor, *reversus sum*, *3.*,
to return

opperior, *oppertus* and *opperitus sum*, *4.*, to expect
legatio, *ōnis*, *f.*, the embassy
quamobrem, therefore, on account of which

festino, *1.*, to hurry
magus, *i*, *m.*, the magician
praedico (*dixi*, *dictum*), *3.*, to foretell

introeo, *introivi*, *introitum*,
introire, to go in

fatālis, *is*, *e*, fatally
concedo, *cessi*, *cessum*, *3.*,
to go

philosōphus, *i*, the philosopher
compello, *pūli*, *pulsum*, *3.*, to induce

contemno, temsi, tentum, 3.,
to despise
praedictum, *i*, n., the prediction
ibique, and there
morior, mortuus sum, 3., to die
aetas, ātis, f., the age
luctus, us, m., the lament
moeror, ōris, m., affliction
pervādo, āsi, āsum, 3., to go
through
celeriter, quick
vestis, is, f., the garment
lugūbris, e, mourning
lacēro, 1., to tear
crinis, is, m., the hair
extinguo, nxi, nctum, 3., to
extinguish, — in the
passive, to die
aversor, 1., to detest
beneficium, ii, n., the benefit
accipio, cepi, ceptum, 3., to
receive
unquam, ever

spolio, 1., to rob, to plunder
vilis, e, bad
tolēro, avi, atum, 1., to bear,
endure
aestas, ātis, f., the summer
hiems, ĕmis, f., the winter
aestus, us, m., the heat
labōro, 1., to work
convivium, ii, n., the banquet
hilāris, e, cheerful
laetus, a, um, happy, pleased
jactantia, ae, f., the ostentation
longe, far
abesse, to be distant
gravātū, unwillingly
praedico, 1., to praise
noceo, ui, itum, 2., to harm
coram, publicly
coram suis, before the eyes
of his (people)
conspicio, spexi, spectrum, 3.,
to see, to perceive.

Alexander cum regnum Persicum evertisset, bellum gessit cum Indis, et complures regulos vicit. Deinde ab ultimis Oceani littoribus reversus est Babylonem. Ibi legationes multarum gentium eum opperiebantur. Quamobrem cum Babylonem festinaret, quidam ex Magis praedixit ei, ne in urbem introiret, quia hic locus ei fatalis esset. Ob hanc causam in aliam urbem, quae Bursia nominata et trans Euphrātem sita erat, concessit. Ibi ab Anaxarcho philosopho compulsus est, ut Magorum praedicta, quae falsa essent et incerta, contemneret. Reversus igitur Babylonem ibique mortuus est aetatis anno tricesimo tertio. Quamquam Alexander crudelia et superba ediderat facinora, mors tamen ejus maximum et Macedonibus et Persis luctum ac moerorem attulit. Fama tanti mali magnam Asiae partem cis Euphrātem pervasit, et celeriter ad Darii quoque matrem pervēnit. Haec vestem sumsit lugubrem, laceravit crines, abstinuit cibo, et mori statuit. Quinto die, postquam mori statuerat, exstincta est.

Agesilaus was King and Commander of the Lacedaemonians, and the most honest man of his time. He loved every thing that was good, and detested the bad. Many men received benefits from him, but nobody was ever robbed by him. Sleep was his servant, never his master. He always had a very hard bed. In summer he endured great heat and in winter great cold. Labour he much loved, and worked always more than his soldiers. At banquets he was cheerful and happy. From this reason many people came often to him. He was far removed from ostentation, yet he did not hear those unwillingly, who praised themselves, for they harmed nobody, and appeared to like bravery. He always lived before the eyes of his people, and that which he did, was seen by all.

82.

Origo, *inis*, f., the origin
debeo, *ui*, *itum*, 2., to be indebted to

conditor, *ōris*, m., the founder
dicuntur, are said

habeo, *ui*, *itum*, 2., have, to hold

statuo, *ui*, *utum*, 3., to resolve

infans, *antis*, m., the child

profluo, *uxi*, 3., to run, stream

mitto, *misi*, *missum*, 3., to throw, to place

casus, *us*, m., the accident

fluvius, *ii*, m., the river

forte, by accident

effundo, *fūdi*, *fūsum*, 3., to pour out

ripa, *ae*, f., the shore

nusquam, nowhere

cursus, *us*, m., the course

justus, *a*, *um*, right

expōno, *posui*, *positum*, 3., to expose

abeo, *ii*, *itum*, *ire*, to go away

lupa, *ae*, f., the she-wolf

praebeo, *ui*, *itum*, 2., to offer

mamma, *ae*, f., the breast

magister, *tri*, m., the master

pecus, *ōris*, n., the cattle

lambo, *i*, *itum*, 3., to lick

uxor, *ōris*, the woman, wife

adolesco, *adolēvi*, *adultum*, 3., to grow up

pastor, *ōris*, m., the shepherd

fera, *ae*, f., the game, wild beasts

figo, *fixi*, *fixum*, 3., to shoot

onustus, *a*, *um*, loaded

divido, *vīsi*, *vīsum*, 3., to divide

in dies, from day to day

cresco, *crevi*, *cretum*, 3., to grow

grex, *gregis*, m., the herd

quibuscum, with which

serius, *a*, *um*, serious

jocus, *i*, m., the joke

tracto, 1., to drive, treat

trado, *didi*, *ditum*, 3., to surrender

aperio, *rui*, *rtum*, 4., to disclose

unde, whence, by whom

cogo, coēgi, coactum, 3., to | *educare, to educate, to bring*
force | *up.*

Romae urbis origo diis debetur. Romulus enim et Remus, urbis conditores, Martis filii, qui belli deus apud Romanos habitus est, fuisse dicuntur. Puerorum mater erat Rhea Sylvia, avus Numitor, rex Albae. Numitorem regno Amulius frater pepulit. Idem Romulum et Remum, Rheae Sylviae liberos, occidere statuerat. Dedit igitur infantes servis suis, qui eos in profluentem aquam mitterent. Sed pueri casu servati sunt. Fluvius enim Tiberis forte effusus erat super ripas, et servi nusquam ad justum fluvii cursum venire poterant; itaque juxta fluvium pueros exposuerunt. Quum servi abiissent, lupa venisse et infantibus mammas praeuisse dicitur. Magister pecoris regii, cui nomen Faustulus erat, lupam invenit lingua pueros lambentem, eosque tulit ad Laurentiam uxorem. Quum pueri adolevisent, non solum boni erant pastores, sed etiam feras figebant, et impetus faciebant in latrones, praeda onustos. Omnia, quae latronibus rapuerant, cum ceteris pastoribus dividebant. Sic in dies grex juvenum crescebat, quibuscum Romulus et Remus res serias et jocos tractabant. Aliquando latrones Remum ceperunt et Amulio regi ad supplicium traderunt. Accusaverunt autem eum de impetu, quem fecisset in agros regis. Faustulus cum hoc audivisset, aperuit Romulo, unde natus esset.

Romulus and Remus were brought up by Faustulus, a shepherd. Faustulus found these two boys near the Tiber, where they had been exposed by their grandfather. For a long while these boys knew nothing of their parents, at last Faustulus disclosed to them the whole affair. Robbers caught Romulus and conducted him to King Amulius. The King threw Romulus into prison. This affair forced Faustulus to disclose his descent to Romulus.

Conjugation of the imperfect Verbs „coepisse“, „meminisse“, „odisse“.

Infinitivus.

coepisse,
to have begun.

| *meminisse,*
to remember.

| *odisse,*
to hate

Participium futuri.

coepturus, a, um.

| — —

| *osurus, a, um.**Perfectum.*Ind. *coepi*, I began
coepisti
*coepit*Conj. *coeperim*| *memini*, I remember
meministi
meminit
meminerim| *odi*, I hate
odisti
odit
*oderim.**Plusquamperfectum.*Ind. *coepĕram*,
I had begunConj. *coepissem*| *meminĕram*,
I remembered.
meminissem| *odĕram*,
I hated.
*odissem.**Futurum exactum.**coepĕro*,
I shall have begun.| *meminĕro*,
I shall remember.| *odĕro*,
I shall hate.

Imperativus.

memento, remember thou.
mementote, remember ye.

83.

Vocabulary.

Globus, i, m., the ball
aggredior, aggressus sum, 3.,
to attack*obtrunco*, 1., to kill*gratŭlor*, 1., to congratulate*advĕco*, 1., to convoke*concilium*, ii, the council*gigno; genui, genitum*, 3., to
give birth*cognosco, nŏvi, nĭtum*, 3., to
recognise*deinceps*, on that, after*tyrannus*, i, the King*concio, ōnis*, f., the assembly*progredior, gressus sum*, 3.,
to go forward*multitudo, ĩnis*, f., the mul-
titude*sequor, secutus sum*, 3., to
follow*cupĭdo, ĩnis*, f., the desire*occasio, ōnis*, f., the occasion*opus, opĕris*, the work*transilto, lui, sultum*, to over-
leap*indeque*, and therefore*iratus, a, um*, angry*appello*, 1., to name*tunc*, there, then, thereon*sacer, cra, crum*, sacred*sacra facere*, to offer, sacrifice*ritus, us, m.*, the rite, ritual

abigo, ēgi, actum, 3., to drive away

mirus, a, um, wonderful
species, ciēi, f., the species

fessus, a, um, tired
procumbo, cubui, cubitum, 3., to lay down

gravare, 1., to be heavy
accōla, ae, m., the neighbour

ferox, ōcis, wild, ferocious

vis, the power, strength

callidus, a, um, artful

vestigium, ii, n., the vestige, the footstep

spelunca, ae, f., the cavern

dedūco, uxi, uctum, 3., to lead

aversus, a, um, backwards

cauda, ae, f., the tail

traho, axi, actum, 3., to draw

lux, lucis, f., the light

prima luce, at break of day

perlustrare, 1., to examine

eo, thereto

ferre, to conduct

foras, outwards

versus, a, um, turned

confusus, a, um, confused

porro, further

ago, egi, actum, 3., to drive

mugio, 4., to bellow

incipio, cēpi, ceptum, 3., to begin

inclusus, a, um, inclosed

clava, ae, f., the club

profugus, a, um, fugitive

consido, ēdi, essum, 3., to establish

Hispania, ae, f., Spain

brachium, ii, n., the arm

imperare, to order

abigo, ēgi, actum, 3., to drive away, to steal

detēgo, exi, ectum, 3., to discover

religio, ōnis, f., the veneration

fugio, fūgi, fugitum, 3., to fly.

Quum Romulus audivisset, quis ipse esset, unde natus, et a quo expositus, cum globo juvenum regem agressus est eumque obtruncavit. Cum Numitor, Romuli et Remi avus, globum videret juvenum gratulantium ad se venire, extemplo concilium advocavit, et ostendit fratris in se scelera, nepotum originem, ut geniti, ut educati, ut cogniti essent, deinde caedem tyranni et se auctorem ejus. Cum juvenes mediam per concionem progressi essent et avum regem salutassent, omnis secuta est multitudo. Cum Numitori regnum redditum esset, Romulum Remumque cupido cepit, in iis locis, ubi expositi, ubique educati essent, urbem condendi. In hoc opere Remus occisus est. Dicitur enim novos muros transsiluisse, ideoque ab irato Romulo interfectus esse. Ita Romulus solus imperium habuit, et condita urbs ab ejus nomine appellata est. Romulus tunc sacra fecit diis, aliis Albano ritu, Herculi ritu Graeco, ut ab Evandro olim instituta erant. Hercules enim, ut dicunt, abegerat in ea loca boves mira specie, et juxta Tiberim, fessus via, procubuerat. Cum ibi, vino ciboque gravatus, dor-

miret, Cacus, accola ejus loci, ferox viribus et satis callidus, nonnullos boves abegit. Ne vestigia boum quaerentem dominum ad speluncam suam deducerent, pulcherrimos aversos caudis in eam traxit. Cum Hercules prima luce gregem oculis perlustravisset, nec omnes boves invenisset, ivit ad proximam speluncam, si forte eo vestigia ferrent. Ibi cum vestigia omnia foras versa videret, confusus atque incertus boves porro agere coepit. Sed mox, cum boves acti mugire inciperent, inclusorum vox ex spelunca reddita est. Hercules igitur reversus ad speluncam, Cacus clava interfecit. Postea Evander, profugus ex Peloponneso, cum in illis locis consedisset, Herculi ibi sacra instituit.

Geryones is said to have been a King of Spain and to have had three bodies, three heads, and six arms. This King had very beautiful oxen. Eurystheus ordered Hercules to fetch these oxen. When Hercules was in Italy with these oxen, a certain Cacus stole some and drew them backwards into a cavern, but Hercules discovered the deceit, and killed Cacus with his club. Cacus was very strong, but Hercules was much¹ stronger. When Hercules had killed Cacus he returned to Greece. In Italy he was afterwards venerated as a God². The originator of his veneration was Evander, who had fled from Greece to Italy.

1 multo. 2 pro deo.

Conjugation of the Verb „ire“.

eo, ivi, itum, ire, to go.

Infinitivus.

Praes.: ire, to go.

Præter.: ivisse, to have gone.

Futur.: iturus, a, um esse, to be about to go.

Participium.

Praes.: itens, Gen. euntis, going.

Futur.: iturus, a, um, about to go.

Gerundium: eundi, eundo, eundum, eundo.

Supinum: itum, itu.

Praesens.**Indicativus.**

eo, I go
is
it
imus
itis
eunt.

Conjunctivus.

eam, I may go
ear
eat
eamus
eatis
eant.

Imperfectum.

ibam, I went
ibas.

irem, I might go
ires.

Perfectum.

ivi, I have gone.

iverim, I may have gone.

Plusquamperfectum.

iveram, I had gone.

ivissem, I might have gone.

Futurum.

ibo, I shall go
ibis
ibit

ibimus, we shall go
ibitis
ibunt.

Futurum exactum.

ivēro, I shall have gone.

Imperativus.

i, go
ito, go thou
ito, let him go.

ite,
itote, } go ye.
eunto, let them go.

Vocabulary.

Coalesco, *coalui*, 3., to grow
together

reddo, *didi*, *ditum*, 3., to give
back

agrestis, *e*, rural

venerabilis, *e*, venerable

insigne, *is*, n., the emblem

lictor, *ōris*, m., the lictor

exsequor, *secutus sum*, 3., to
execute

asylum, *i*, n., the refuge

turba, *ae*, f., the crowd, mob

finitimus, *a*, *um*, neighbouring

discrimen, *mīnis*, n., the dif-
ference

perfugio, fūgi, fugitum, 3.,
to flee.

incōla, ae, m., the inhabitant
augeo, auxi, auctum, 2., to
augment

sive — sive, either — or
postēri, ōrum, the successors
patricius, i, m., the aristocrat
spatium, ii, n., the space
maneo, mansi, mansum, 2.,
to remain

par, Gen. paris, matched
desum, fui, esse, to want
legatus, i, m., the ambassador

legatio, ōnis, f., embassy

durare, 1., to last

vanus, a, um, vain

benigne, kind

audire, 4., to hear, listen

contemno, msi, mtum, 3., to
despise

dignus, a, um, worthy

vobis dignus, worthy of you

aegre ferre, to be angry

ad vim spectare, to think of
force

indico, dixi, dictum, 3., to
announce.

Romulus cum diis sacra fecisset, multitudinem ad concilium convocavit, et leges populo dedit; nam sine legibus multitudo coalescere in corpus unius populi non poterat. Ut has leges sanctas redderet hominibus agrestibus, se ipsum venerabilem fecit insignibus imperii, et praecipue duodecim lictoribus. Hi ministri erant, qui supplicia, quae Romulus statuerat, exsequebantur. Deinde, cum asylum aperuisset, omnis turba ex finitimis populis, sine discrimine, eo perfugit, quae res novam urbem praecipue incolis auxit. Tum Romulus centum creavit senatores, sive quia is numerus satis erat, sive quia tantum centum erant, qui senatores creari possent. Senatores appellati sunt a senectute, vel Patres, quorum posteri patricii nominati sunt. Patricii per longum temporis spatium principes urbis Romae manserunt.

The Roman Empire was so powerful, that it was a match for any of the neighbouring states, but women were wanting. Without women the state could not last long. Romulus therefore sent ambassadors to the neighbouring people respecting marriages, but these embassies were nowhere kindly received. The tribes despised the Romans, and at the same time feared their growing power. Many said: We shall not give you our daughters, for our daughters are virtuous, and you are highwaymen. The Roman youths were very angry at this, and began to think of force. Romulus in order to assist this design announced a spectacle to the neighbours.

85.

Convenio, vēni, ventum, 4.,
to come together
spectaculum, i, n., the spectacle
ubi, when
vis, the force
discurro, curri, cursum, 3.,
to run backwards and
forwards
maestus, a, um, sad
incūso, 1., to accuse
violo, 1., to violate
hospitium, ii, n., the hospitality
circumeo, ii, itum, 4., to go
round
superbia, ae, the pride
connubium, ii, n., the marriage
nego, 1., to deny
mollio, 4., to mitigate
forte, by accident
fortūna, ae, f., the happiness
communis, e, in common
gratia, ae, f., the favour, love

obliviscor, oblītus sum, 3., to
forget
accēdo, cessi, cessum, 3., to
come round to, to accede
blanditia, ae, f., the caressing
efficax, ācis, effective
mitigo, 1., to calm
praepāro, 1., to prepare
arx, arcis, f., the fortress
praesum, praefui, praeesse,
to command
armo, 1., to arm
accipio, cēpi, ceptum, 3., to
receive, to harbour
moenia, ium, n., the town wall
peto, tīvi, titum, 3., to ask,
to fetch
prodo, dīdi, dītum, 3., to set up
usquam, anywhere
proditor, ōris, m., the traitor
adhībeo, ui, itum, 2., to employ
sua sponte, voluntary.

Multi homines convenerunt, ut spectaculum et novam urbem viderent. Praeter ceteros autem omnis Sabinorum multitudo, cum liberis ac conjugibus, venit. Ubi tempus spectaculi venit, Romulus signum dedit, et omnis Romana juvenus discurrit, ut virgines raperent. Raptarum parentes maesti abierunt, Romanos violati hospitii incusantes, neque virgines minus erant maestae et iratae, quam parentes. Sed Romulus ipse circumibat, et cum virginibus sic loquebatur: Hoc factum est superbia patrum vestrorum, qui connubia nobis negaverunt. Mollite iras, et date animos vestros iis, quibus sors corpora vestra dedit. Omnes fortunae nostrae vobiscum communes erunt. Saepe ex injuria gratia orta est. Optimos habebitis maritos; omnes enim sic agent, ut facilius patriam oblivisci possitis. Ita raptarum animi satis jam erant mitigati, sed parentes bellum parabant. Sabinorum Rex Tatius, Tarpeji, qui Romanae arci praeerat, filiam auro corrumpit, ut armatos Sabinos in arcem acciperet; nam ea forte extra moenia iverat, aquam petiturum. Sabini postea eam necaverunt, sive ut arx

vi, non dolo, capta videretur, sive ut exemplum prodērent, ne quid usquam fidum esset proditori.

The early Romans stole their wives. The pride of the neighbouring people urged the Romans to this force. Nobody would give his daughter in marriage to a Roman. The Romans had sent embassies to all neighbouring tribes and requested that they would give them their daughters. As the neighbours refused this, the Romans used strategem and force, and stole what the parents would not voluntarily give them. In consequence of this, a war originated between the neighbouring people and the Romans. The greatest war was between the Romans and Sabines, for most of the stolen girls were daughters of the Sabines. This war was however finished in an amicable way.

86.

Teneo, nui, 2., to hold
postērus, a, um, following
compleo, plēvi, pletum, 2.,
 to fill
campus, i, m., the field
descendo, di, sum, 3., to come
 down
aequus, a, um, equal
aequum, the plain
utrimque, on both parts
ciō, civi, citum, 2., to excite
cado, cecidi, casum, 3., to fall
acies, ēi, f., the army
fundo, fūdi, fūsum, 3., to beat
tunc, then
tollo, sustūli, sublatum, 3.,
 to raise
jussu tuo, on thy command
hic, here
jacio, jēcī, jactum, 3., to throw
fundamentum jacere, to lay
 the foundation
scelus, scelēris, n., the crime

ēmo, ēmi, emtum, 3., to buy
huc, hither
tendo, tetendi, tentum, 3., to
 strain, to die
at, but
arceo, cui, citum, 2., to prevent
hinc, from here
demo, demsi, demtum, 3., to
 take away
terror, ōris, m., the fear
fuga, ae, f., the flight
sisto, stiti, statum, 3., to bring
 to a stand
voveo, vovi, votum, 2., to
 vow
auxilium, ii, n., the assistance
convertor, versus sum, 3., to
 turn
resisto, stiti, stitum, 3., to
 resist
itēro, l., to renew
provōlo, avi, atum, l., to fly
 before, to hasten

decurro, decurri, decursum,

3., to run down

ago, egi, actum, 3., to drive

procul, from far

clamito, 1., to call

perfidus, a, um, faithless

pugno, 1., to fight

palus, lūdis, f., the marsh

redintēgro, 1., to renew

proelium, ii, n., the battle

convallis, is, f., the valley

socer, cēri, m., the father in law

gener, genēri, m., the son in law

sanguis, guinis, m., the blood

contamīno, 1., to stain

verto, ti, sum, 3., to turn

moveo, movi, motum, 2., to
move

silentium, ii, n., the silence

subitus, a, um, immediate

quies, iētis, f., the calm, sus-
pension of hostilities

conjungo, junxi, junctum, to
unite.

Tenuerunt igitur arcem Sabini. Postero die exercitus Romanus complevit campum, qui est inter Palatinum Capitolinumque collem. Cum Sabini de arce descendissent in æquum, pugna coepta est. Principes utrimque pugnam ciebant; a Sabinis Mettus Curtius, a Romanis Hostus Hostilius. Hostus cecidit, et Romana acies fusa est. Tunc Romulus arma ad coelum tollens sic est precatus: Jupiter, tuo jussu hic in Palatio prima urbis fundamenta jeci. Jam arcem tenent Sabini, quam scelere emerunt; armati huc tendunt. At tu, pater deorum hominumque, hinc saltem arce hostes; deme terrorem Romanis, et fugam foedam siste. Hic ego tibi templum voveo, si nos juvas, quod posteris tui auxilii monumentum erit. Quum haec precatus esset, ad suos conversus, Romani, inquit, Jupiter optimus maximus jubet resistere atque iterare pugnam. Restiterunt Romani, Romulus ad primōres provolat. Mettus Curtius a Sabinis primus ab arce decurrerat et Romanos in fugam egerat; jam non procul erat a porta Palatii, clamitans: Vicimus perfidos hospites, imbelles hostes. Aliud est, virgines rapere, aliud, pugnare cum viris. In eum Romulus impetum fecit cum globo ferocissimorum juvenum. Mettus tum forte pugnabat ex equo; eo facile pulsus est. Mox Sabini in fugam fusi sunt. Mettus se coniecit in paludem. Tandem Romani Sabinique praelium in convalle duorum montium redintegrant; sed res Romana superior fuit.

When the Sabine wives of the Romans saw the battle, they went between the fighting men, and begged their parents and their husbands, that¹ they, fathers in law and sons in law, should not stain themselves with each others blood. Turn

your wrath towards us, they said, for we are the cause of the war, we are the cause of the wounds and death of our parents and our husbands. This occurrence moved the soldiers and commanders. It made a silence and an immediate suspension of hostilities. The commanders then made peace, and made two towns out of one, and united the government.

1 that — not, ne.

87.

Curia, *ae*, *f.*, a division of people

imponere nomen, to give the name

concursum, *us*, *m.*, the concourse

aegre ferre, to take amiss

par, *paris*, just

ulciscor, *ultus sum*, *ulcisci*, to revenge

recenseo, *sui*, *situm*, *2.*, to review

fragor, *ōris*, *m.*, the crash

tonitru, *tru*, *n.*, the thunder

operio, *ru*, *ritum*, *4.*, to cover

nimbus, *i*, *m.*, dark cloud

aufero, *abstuli*, *ablatum*, *auferre*, to take away

verisimilis, *e*, probable

discerpo, *psi*, *ptum*, *3.*, to tear in pieces

trado, *tridi*, *ditum*, *3.*, to tell, inform

arroganter, arrogant

excēdo, *cessi*, *cessum*, *3.*, to leave

vita excedere, to die

cuncti, altogether

jam, already

religio, *ōnis*, *f.*, the conscientiousness

celebro, *1.*, to praise.

Haec pax, ex tam tristi bello orta, Sabinas et maritis et parentibus cariores fecit, et ante omnes Romulo ipsi. Itaque, cum Romulus populum in triginta curias divideret, nomina nonnullarum Sabinarum his curiis imposuit. Post aliquot annos factum est, ut Tatius in concursu hominum occideretur. Quam rem Romulus minus aegre tulisse dicitur, quam par erat. Nec ultus est caedem. Deinde bella cum Fidenatibus et Vejentibus gesserunt Romani. In utroque bello Romani fuerunt victores. Mox Romuli mors secuta est. De hac morte fama est diversa. Romulus concionem convocaverat, ut exercitum recenseret; subito tempestas cum magno fragore tonitribusque orta est, et operuit regem tam denso nimbo, ut conspectus ejus concioni auferretur; nec deinde in terris Romulus fuit. Haec narratio de regis morte credita est. Sed verisimilior altera est fama, qua Romulus a senatoribus occisus,

et corpus ejus discerptum esse traditur. Nam Romulus nimis arroganter regnare et senatores contemnere coeperat; unde facile fieri potuit, ut senatores consilium caperent tyrannum occidendi. Romulus annos septem et triginta regnaverat, quum vita excederet.

After the death of Romulus arose an interregnum. Ten men were chosen, each of whom governed five days, and altogether not longer than one year. But this government did not please the people very long, as they appeared to have ten masters instead of one. The senators therefore came to the conclusion of choosing a King. The justice and conscientiousness of Numa Pompilius were at that time very much commended and praised. The senators elected this man as King of the Romans.

88.

Intēger, gra, grum, untouched
de integro, again
describo, psi, ptum, 3., to divide
formo, 1., to form
verecundia, ae, f., the esteem
addūco, duxi, ductum, 3., to add
cultus, us, m., the reverence
nefas, n., the sin
rigo, 1., to water
arbiter, tri, the witness
congressus, us, m., meeting
sacro, 1., to dedicate
validus, a, um, strong

ars, artis, f., the art
floreo, ui, 2., to flourish
avitus, a, um, old
undique, from all sides
prope, nearly
natus, i, m., the born, the son
tectum, i, n., house, roof
diruo, ui, itum, 3., to destroy
fortiter, valorous
conspiciuus, a, um, visible
ager Albānus, the country of the Albans
repēto, tivi, titum, to demand back.

Numa cum rex creatus esset, urbem, quae vi et armis condita erat, de integro legibus et moribus condere studebat. Annum ad lunae cursum in duodecim menses descripsit. Sacerdotes creavit. Omnes Romanos et doctrina et exemplo suo tanta pietate imbuat, ut fides et religio melius, quam leges et poenae, civitatem regerent. Omnes in regis, velut praecipui exempli, mores se formabant. Finitimi quoque populi, qui antea multa cum Romanis bella gesserant, in tantam verecundiam adducti sunt, ut civitatem violare, quae tota in decorum

cultum versa esset, nefas putarent. Lucus erat, quem fons perenni aqua rigabat. Quia Numa saepe sine arbitris in hunc lucum ibat, velut ad congressum deae Egeriae, sacravit eum Musis, quod earum concilia ibi cum Egeria essent. Omnium ejus operum maximum erat pacis conservatio per omne regni tempus. Ita hi duo primi reges civitatem auxerunt, Romulus bello, Numa pace. Numa tres et quadraginta annos regnavit. Civitatem reliquit validam et pacis artibus maxime florentem. Morte ejus res ad interregnum rediit. Tum Tullum Hostilium, Hostilii, quem supra memoravimus, nepotem, regem creaverunt. Is non solum Numae dissimilis, sed etiam ferocior fuit, quam Romulus. Nam et aetas, et vires, et avita gloria animum stimulant. Undique materiam quaerebat bella excitandi. Primum bellum gessit cum Albanis, quod fuit civili simillimum; nam prope inter parentes et natos gerebatur. Tamen eventus belli minus tristis fuit; tecta tantum alterius urbis diruta sunt, et duo populi in unum confusi.

Tullus Hostilius was the third King of the Romans. He was yet young when elected, and loved peace less than Numa. He is said to have been even more warlike than Romulus himself. The courage of his grandfather who fought so bravely in the war between the Romans and Sabines, was visible in him. An opportunity soon appeared to commence a war. The Romans had driven away cattle from the Albans, the Albans, from the Roman territory. From both parties ambassadors were sent, to demand back the cattle. Tullus, who wished for war, made use of a trick, and thus caused the war to break out. The Romans were conquerors in this war; from the two people one was made, and the city of the Albans was destroyed.

89.

Castra, ōrum, n., the camp
colloquium, ii, n., a conference
aspernor, 1., to dismiss
procēdo, cessi, cessum, 3., to go on
cognātus, a, um, related
polleo, ui, 2., can perform
confectus, a, um, weakened

aggredior, gressus sum, gredi, to attack
viam inire, to take a course
displiceo, cui, citum, 2., to displease
trigeminus, a, um, threefold
fratres trigemini, three-twin-children

dispar, dispāris, unequal
nobilis, e, distinguished
recūso, 1., to refuse
erat futurum, should be
consido, ēdi, essum, 3., to seat
 oneself

infestus, a, um, hostile
concurro, curri, cursum, 3.,
 to run together

ager Romanus, the Roman
 territory

terni, ae, a, three and three
capesso, sivi, situm, 3., to
 seize

sepāro, 1., to separate

singūlus, a, um, singly
sponsa, ae, f., the bride
fleo, evi, etum, 2., to weep
sponsus, i, m., the lover
agnosco, nōvi, nītum, 3., to
 recognize

fletus, us, m., the weeping
stringo, inxi, ictum, 3., to draw
transfigo, ixi, ixum, 3., to stab
advōco, 1., to call together
absolvo, solvi, solūtum, 3., to
 absolve

admiratio, ōnis, f., the ad-
 miration.

Cum hoc bellum ortum est, Cluilius, rex Albanus, in castris moritur. Dux eligitur Mettus Fuffetius. Hic ad Romanorum regem legatos mittit, et petit ab eo, ut concedat colloquium. Tullus haud adspernatus est rem. Uterque in medium procēdit. Ibi Albanus dux sic loquitur: Tulle, cupido imperii duos cognatos vicinosque populos ad arma stimulat. Illud te monēre volo: Etrusci sunt vicini nostri; hi multum pollent terra marique. Si nunc bella gerimus, et fessi confectique sumus, hi nos aggredientur, simul victorem ac victum. Ineamus igitur aliquam viam, qua res nostra decerni possit sine magna clade et sine multo sanguine. Res haud displicet Tullo. Forte tum erant in duobus exercitibus trigemini fratres, nec aetate, nec viribus dispāres, Horatii et Curiatii nominati. Quamquam ferme non alia res antiqua nobilior est, tamen error nominum manet, utrius populi Horatii, utrius Curiatii fuerint. Plures tamen auctores Romanos vocant Horatios. Cum his trigeminis fratribus reges agunt, ut pro sua patria pugnent ferro. Neutri recūsant; tempus et locus constituitur. Ubi victoria, ibi imperium erat futurum. Trigemini arma capiunt. Consedērant utrimque pro castris duo exercitus. Datur signum. Infestis armis concurrunt terni juvenes. Nec his, nec illis periculum, sed imperium patriae ante oculos est. Duo Horatii vulnerantur et occiduntur; tertius solus superstes est. Sed hic unus tres Curiatios occidit. Nec tamen id sine dolo efficit. Ipse intēger erat, sed tres Curiatii vulnerati. Hinc fugam capessivit, ut ipsos separaret, et singulos occidere posset. Sic

unus victor fuit trium fratrum, et patriae imperium Albanorum paravit.

Horatius who had conquered the three Alban brothers, tarnished his fame by a very cruel action. His sister was the bride of one of the Curiatii, and wept, when she saw the garment of her lover over the shoulder of her brother. She had made this garment herself, and therefore recognised it immediately. The weeping of the sister aggravated the wrath of the brother, he drew his sword and stabbed the girl. This deed appeared to the senators and people monstrous, and the youth was conducted to the King. The King called an assemblage of the people. The father begged for his son. The people could not bear the tears of the father and absolved the son, more out of admiration of his valour, than according to the right of the case. Horatia was buried where she was killed. Thus a glorious victory was tarnished by a very cruel murder.

90.

Benigne, kindly.

allōquor, loquutus sum, 3.,
to address

statuo, ui, utum, 3., to fix

proditio, ōnis, f., the treason

culpa, ae, f., the guilt

ruptor, ōris, n., the violator

foedus, dēris, n., the alliance

adhībeo, bui, bitum, 2., to
apply, to give

vivus, a, um, living

quoniam, because

insanabilis, e, incurable

paullo, for a little

paullo ante, shortly before

anceps, ancipitis, double, wa-
vering

distrāho, axi, actum, 3., to
tear asunder

distendo, di, tum, 3., to put
asunder

concito, 1., to drive

dilacēro, 1., to tear

averto, ti, sum, 3., to turn away

foedus, a, um, terrible

ceterōquin, else

eques, equitis, m., the knight

crudeliter, barbarous

platēa, ae, f., the street

planctus, us, m., the lamen-
tation

solum, i, n., the soil

adaequo, 1., to make equal,
to raise

dare ruinis, to make into ruin.

Mox bellum inter Romanos et Fidenates ortum est. Tullus Mettū ab Alba ad se vocavit. Mettū cum exercitu suo

ad Tullum venit. Sed in proelio non fuit fidus. Cum proelium finitum esset, et Romani victoriam reportavissent, Mettus Tullo gratulatus est de hostibus victis. Tullus contra Mettum benigne alloquutus est, et sacrificium in posterum diem statuit. Postero die uterque exercitus aderat, et Tullus sic locutus est: Romani, omnium proeliorum hesternum fuit periculosissimum. Dimicatum est enim non magis cum hostibus, quam cum proditione et perfidia sociorum. Sed haec non culpa est omnium Albanorum, sed ducis. Mettus proditionis auctor est, Mettus ruptor foederis Romani Albanique. Tum Metto dixit: Mette, si discere fidem posses ac foedera servare, vivo tibi ea disciplina a me adhibita esset. Nunc quoniam ingenium tuum insanabile est, doce supplicio tuo genus humanum ea sancta habere, quae a te violata sunt. Ut igitur paullo ante animus tuus inter Fidenates et Romanos anceps fuit, ita corpus tuum nunc distrahetur in duas partes. Tunc Mettus in duos currus distentus ab equis in diversam partem concitatis dilaceratus est. Omnes oculos a tam foedo spectaculo averterunt. Hoc supplicium fuit sane crudelissimum; primum tamen et ultimum fuit exemplum tantae crudelitatis, ceteroquin poenae Romanorum fuerunt mitissimae. Cum haec fierent, equites Romani jam praemissi erant Albam, qui populum traducerent Romam. Milites deinde eo ducti sunt, ut diruerent urbem. Tempia tamen servata sunt; ita enim a rege jussum erat.

Mettus the King of the Albans was faithless to the Romans. His faithlessness was so severely punished, that all turned their eyes away from the sad spectacle. His body was torn to pieces by horses. The city of the Albans was then destroyed, and the inhabitants were led to Rome. When the inhabitants left their city, they filled the streets with lamentations. When the inhabitants had left the city the houses were razed to the ground. A single hour changed the work of four hundred years into ruin.

A KEY
TO THE EXERCISES OF
THE NEW PRACTICAL AND EASY METHOD
OF LEARNING THE
LATIN LANGUAGE

BY

J. H. SEIDENSTÜCKER.

AFTER THE SYSTEM OF AHN.

Second Edition.

LONDON:

FRANZ THIMM.

FOREIGN BOOKSELLER AND PUBLISHER.

**3 BROOK STREET, GROSVENOR SQUARE W.; AND AT 53 PRINCESS
STREET, MANCHESTER.**

1862.

fw

Page 2. Sect. 4.

Pater meus est bonus. Mater est bona. Mensa est longa. Frater est bonus. Meus bonus frater. Mea bona soror. Mater bona. Mater mea.

Page 2. Sect. 5.

Aqua profunda. Frater tuus est bonus. Mater tua est bona. Mea bona mater. Meum longum scamnum. Mea mensa rotunda est. Mensa est rotunda. Mensa rotunda.

Page 2. Sect. 6.

Soror tua venusta est. Frater meus est parvus. Tuus parvus frater. Soror venusta. Puella venusta. Hortus magnus. Longum scamnum. Rotunda mensa. Soror tua est venusta puella.

Page 3. Sect. 7.

Frater meus magnus est, sed soror mea est parva. Parvus tuus equus carus est, sed bonus est. Aqua est profunda. Scamnum est longum. Mea mensa est rotunda. Hortus tuus carus est, sed magnus est.

Page 3. Sect. 8.

Meus annulus valde carus est. Frater tuus valde bonus est. Soror tua valde venusta est. Curvus baculus. Pura aqua. Aqua est pura. Hortus est valde carus. Equus tuus valde carus est.

Page 4. Sect. 9.

Equus albus meus est, niger est tuus. Lignum tuum non est durum. Album lignum. Profunda aqua. Cælum altum. Frater meus est bonus. Soror tua bona est. Meus equus magnus est et carus. Venusta puella. Bona mater. Bonus pater. Bonus frater. Bona soror. Mater mea bona est. Pater meus valde bonus est. Equus meus albus est, non niger.

Page 4. Sect. 10.

Frater meus non est malus. Vinum est bonum. Filia tua magna est. Soror mea parva est puella. Frater tuus magnus est puer. Cælum non est serenum. Vinum album est valde bonum.

Page 5. Sect. 11.

Rex est bonus, sed regina valde mala est. Rotunda olla cava est. Aurum non est argentum. Aqua est frigida. Equus est carus. Ferrum est meum. Aurum est valde carum.

Page 5. Sect. 12.

Meus frater non omnino sanus est. Rex ægrotus non est beatus. Sana est regina, sed filia valde ægrota est. Mea soror semper est sana. Frater meus non est ægrotus. Homo beatus est. Meus pater est semper ægrotus. Meus pater est valde ægrotus.

Page 6. Sect. 13.

Mea soror. Tuum cerebrum. Tuus frater non minus est beatus quam meus. Si tua mater invida est, non est bona; nam bona mater non est invida. Homo invidus non est beatus. Pater meus sæpe est ægrotus. Lingua magis quam necessaria est.

Page 6. Sect. 14.

Frater meus bonus est homo, nam justus est et benignus. Si tuus frater justus etiam esset et benignus, ille etiam bonus homo esset; sed non est justus. Ego tuus amicus sum, nam tu bonus es: si bonus non esses, amicus tuus non essem. Longum collum. Cerebrum sanum. Mei humeri. Digitus curvus. Serenum cœlum. Aqua profunda. Homo malus. Rex justus. Regina benigna.

Page 7. Sect. 15.

Pater noster bonus valde est contentus. Tuus frater minus contentus est; nam est avarus. Homo avarus non est beatus. Nullus homo est perfectus. Rex contentus. Regina contenta. Amicus avarus. Frater beatus. Mater justa. Sum rex. Rex est justus. Regina est justa.

Page 8. Sect. 16.

Rex noster est pius. Rex pius est etiam justus. Rex, qui pius est, justus etiam est. Rex victus pavidus est. Rex bellicosus non est pavidus. Si rex noster pavidus esset, non esset bellicosus; nam ille, qui pavidus est, bellicosus non est. Miles sæpe est iracundus. Rex superbus non est rex bonus. Si rex noster magis bellicosus esset quam est, tu etiam miles nunc esses. Superbus homo sincerus non est.

Page 8. Sect. 17.

Hæc mensa rotunda mea est. Hæc mensa, quæ rotunda est, est mea. Hoc scamnum, quod valde longum est, tuum est. Certa est historia. Lingua nostra salva est. Meus avus, qui nunc est ægrotus, valde pius est. Pia nostra avia ægrota est. Homo, qui est honestus, est etiam beatus. Non minus ego sum beatus quam tu et frater tuus. Historia antiqua valde grata est.

Page 9. Sect. 18.

Hic discipulus filius est meus. Meus filius homo liber est. Homo, qui est liber, est beatus. Ille homo liber est

mercator. Hic puer est niger. Puer piger non est liber. Pes parvus est venustus. Non tam gratus est niger homo quam albus. Magnus leo. Niger mercator. Hic flos venustus. Pigra illa puella.

Page 9. Sect. 19.

Homo beatus sum, nam sum contentus. Homo contentus est beatus. Hic homo contentus est meus frater. Homo ille ægrotus est. Homo ægrotus est miser. Carcer pœna dura est. Frater meus est miser; nam avarus est. Homo avarus est semper miser. Tu potes esse beatus, si vis.

Page 10. Sect. 20.

Captivitas est dura pœna. Debet esse pœna, si homo est malus. Si nullus homo esset malus, pœna non esset necessaria. Si hic puer tam piger non esset, bonus esset discipulus. Bonus discipulus non debet esse piger. Si bonus es discipulus, ego sum amicus tuus.

Page 11. Sect. 21.

Bellum est magnum malum; sed pax est magnum bonum. Si semper pax esset, vita nostra magis beata esset quam nunc est. Hic puer potest esse valde beatus si vult; sed non vult; piger est. Vita tua esset beata, si pius esses et honestus. Vita tua pia meum gaudium est. Tuum verbum lex severa est. Hæc lex severa est, sed est justa. Lex justa debet esse severa. Si lex non est justa, vituperanda est. Hæc lex tota est justa.

Page 12. Sect. 22.

Dominus meus benignus est et justus: servus sum. Servus debet esse sedulus. Sedulus servus est laudandus, piger est vituperandus. Veritas est nunquam vituperanda. Mendacium semper est vituperandum. Meum verbum est verum. Noster hortus neque magnus neque parvus est. Luna non tam magna est quam terra. Cælum est altum. Aqua est profunda. Apis est sedula. Hæc avis est parva. Hæc laus est vituperanda. Rex noster laudandus est. Pax æterna. Quando dominus meus adest, ego etiam adsum.

Page 12. Sect. 23.

Omne animal est utile. Omne animal est mortale. Homo, qui mortalis est, est etiam æternus. Meus frater fortis est miles. Soror mea æque fortis est ac frater meus. Otium est periculosum. Amicitia nostra debet esse fortis. Si tu vis esse meus amicus, sum contentus. Deus benignus et lenis pater est.

Page 13. Sect. 24.

Hæc mensa rotunda est, et illud scamnum est breve. Cælum est serenum, et luna est alba. Si non adest luna, nox obscura est. Nox obscura non est grata. Nox non est amica mea. Quando nox est, cælum est obscurum. Debet nox esse obscura, nisi adsit luna. Mea soror fidelis est puella. Si omnis homo fidelis esset, humana vita esset valde grata.

Page 14. Sect. 25.

Non omnis terra est fertilis. Hoc solum est fertile, illud sterile est. Si tota terra fertilis esset, homines possent vivere ubique. Vita humana sæpe valde tristes est et misera. Si homo est miser, ipse non semper causa est: fraus aliena sæpe est causa.

Page 14. Sect. 26.

Homo bonus est semper beatus. Si filius sapiens est, pater est contentus. Omnis filius sapiens esse posset, si vellet. Omnis puer sapiens et omnis puella sapiens mihi placent. Puella dives non semper puella bona est. Ille qui dives est potest et debet esse liberalis. Pauperes non possunt esse liberales. Ille qui vult liberalis esse, pauper esse non debet.

Page 15. Sect. 27.

Patres sæpe nimis sunt severi; sed matres plerumque nimis lenes sunt. Si omnis mater æque esset severa ac

pater, filius sæpe esset beatus. Mei filii boni sunt: sum igitur contentus et beatus. Nemo omnino est beatus. Si omnes homines sunt beati, ego etiam beatus sum.

Page 17. Sect. 28.

Reginæ omnes non sunt beatæ: multæ valde miseræ sunt. Si filii mali sunt et pigri, non possunt parentes beati et hilares esse. Omnia bella noxia sunt. Nullum bellum utile est. Si omne bellum esset utile, rex bellicosus semper esset laudandus. Homo qui vult laudari debet esse bonus. Omnes homines boni sunt laudandi: omnes mali vituperandi.

Page 17. Sect. 29.

Homines illi qui diu vivere volunt debent esse sobrii. Multi quidem diu vivere volunt; sobrii autem esse non possunt: sobrii si possent esse, diu etiam viverent. Vita longa grata est, si semper sani sumus. Si homo est semper agrotus, longa vita non est expetenda. Si vis diu vivere, sobrius esse debes. Mei fratres sobrii sunt. Omnes homines sobrii esse possent, dummodo vellent. Utinam omnes homines sobrii essent!

Page 18. Sect. 30.

Agri multi steriles sunt et tamen culti. Nostri agri culti sunt et fertiles. Sterilis non tam carus est quam fertilis ager. Steriles non tam cari sunt quam fertiles agri. Mei omnes agri sunt fertiles. Si fertiles non essent, non tam contentus essem quam nunc sum. Vestri agri magis fertiles sunt quam mei. Hi flores sunt venusti. Venusti flores cari sunt.

Page 19. Sect. 31.

Hic senex miser est. Multi senes sunt beati. Boni senes debent honorari. Homines omnes, qui senes fieri volunt, debent esse sobrii. Vita sobria est laudanda. Utinam homines omnes sobrii essent! Omnis homo sobrius esse potest, si vult. Amicus meus sobrius est. Amici mei omnes sobrii sunt. Animalia multa magis sobria sunt quam homo.

Page 20. Sect. 32.

Multa quidem animalia sunt crudelia; pauca autem crudeliora sunt quam, plerumque, est latro. Latrones mali sunt viri. Si rex vester æque esset severus atque benignus, tam multi non essent latrones et fures. Justitia debet esse severa: ubi nulla est severitas, ibi etiam nulla est justitia

Page 21. Sect. 33.

Leo est animal generosum. Leones generosi sunt. Leo est animal forte. Fortior est quam multa alia animalia, Si leo tam crudelis esset quam fortis est, periculosum esset animal. Nunc minus est periculosus. Leo mitior est quam tigris. Crudelior est tigris quam alia animalia multa.

Page 25. Sect. 34.

Filius hujus hominis doctior est quam ego. Caput hominis est rotundum. Hortus præceptoris mei magnus est. Horti patris mei sunt cari. Regis nostri audaces sunt filii. Conjux est reginæ rex. Verbum regis justum est. Rex debet esse justus. Rex justus optimus est. Filia regis est venusta.

Page 26. Sect. 35.

Vita equi brevior est quam vita hominis. Humana vita brevis est. Hominis infelicis vita longior esse videtur quam vita hominis felicis. Felices sunt parentes quorum liberi boni sunt. Utinam omnes homines essent felices! Felix est rex, cujus felix est populus. Ille felix est pater, cujus liberi sunt boni. Omnis homo est mortalis. Schola nostra bona est. Liberi illi sunt seduli. Fratres mei magis seduli sunt quam tui.

Page 27. Sect. 36.

Pater, cujus bonus est filius et honestus, felix est pater; sed infelix est si filius turpis est. Turpis filius opprobrium est parentum. Non omnes bonorum parentum boni sunt filii; omnes autem talium parentum filii boni esse, si vellent,

possent. Pauperum parentum filii sæpe meliores sunt quam filii parentum locupletium. Pestis sæpe pecunia est puero-
rum ditium. Vir cujus summum bonum multa est pecunia,
vir infelix est. Diligentia quam pecunia melior est. Perire
potest pecunia; diligentia autem fons perennis est lucri. Is
qui diligens est, semper est satis dives: divites facile fieri
possunt pauperes.

Page 28. Sect. 37.

Struthiocameli pennæ venustæ et caræ sunt. Struthio-
camelus magna avis est, quæ velocius currere potest quam
potest volare. Alæ struthiocameli breves sunt; struthiocame-
lus igitur volare non potest velociter. Aves omnes volare
possunt; alii autem velocius possunt volare quam alii. Co-
lumba est parva avis, et satis velociter volare potest. Multæ
aves parvæ velocius quam multæ magnæ volare possunt.
Passer est parva avis quæ velociter volare potest.

Page 29. Sect. 38.

Viri, quorum mores mali sunt, laudari nec possunt nec
debent; ii autem sunt laudandi, quorum mores boni sunt.
Mores pueri debent esse boni. Mores puerorum si semper
essent boni, multi parentes feliciores essent quam nunc sunt.
Multi pueri valde sunt lascivi. Si lascivus esset filius meus,
gaudium meum non esset. Puerorum diligentia parentum
est gaudium. Omnes bonorum parentum non boni sunt
liberi; malorum autem parentum liberi boni sæpe sunt: non
semper igitur periculosum est exemplum malum.

Page 31. Sect. 39.

Vir felicissimus is est, qui contentus est. Nemo felix
est, qui non est contentus. Homines multi, dummodo vellent,
contenti esse possent; nolunt autem. Felicior sæpe pauper
est quam dives. Viri divites infelicissimi sæpe sunt, quia
non sunt contenti. Utinam omnes essent contenti! Feli-
cissimus frater meus hominum est. Felicior frater meus,
quam tu et ego, est. Non sum contentus. Debet homo
esse contentus, si vult esse felix. Contenta mater mea est,

contentus est frater meus, contentus ego sum. Sumus contenti omnes.

Page 32. Sect. 40.

Præceptores fuerunt Romanorum Græci. Miltiades dux clarus fuit Græcorum. Nullus major Græcorum ducum quam Miltiades fuit. Ducis hujus gloria est æterna. Ducis hujus poena immerita fuit. Viri erant ingratisissimi cives ejus.

Page 32. Sect. 41.

Reges omnes mortales sunt; nam sunt homines. Is qui homo est semel morietur. Juvenis æque mortalis est ac senex. Vita senis qui pravus fuit non potest esse jucunda. Vita industria jucundior est quam otiosa. Viri otiosi felices non sunt. Vitii cujusque principium est otium. Vitii principium parvum est. Is omnium est felicissimus, cujus vita fuit semper honesta. Vita honesta est optima. Nulla tam felix vita est quam honesta (vita). Utinam honesti essent omnes! Omnes honesti si essent, nemo esset miser. Negotiosus frater meus est, et felix: otiosa autem soror mea, et misera.

Page 35. Sect. 42.

Ciceronis filius non æque magnus fuit ac pater. Cicero, pater, maximus orator fuit Romanorum. Cicero, filius, non æque diligens fuit ac pater: si æque fuisset diligens, orator, fortasse, æque magnus fuisset. Magnorum virorum filii non semper magni ipsi sunt. Vir clarissimus mendici saepe filius est; et mendicus interdum filius est viri clarissimi. Magni homines rari sunt. Vir maximus non est perfectus. Vita humana et brevis est et longa: longa, si industrii sumus et diligentes; brevis, si pigri sumus et negligentes.

Page 37. Sect. 43.

Fuerunt semper imitatores, et semper erunt. Imitator bonus vituperandus non est. Omnes si essent imitatores vituperandi, vituperandus esset Virgilius, qui est imitator Homeri. Dicitur Homerus fuisse cæcus; sed haud scimus

an cæcus revera fuerit. Homeri poemata sunt Græce scripta: poemata Virgilii scripta sunt Latine. Poemata Homeri quam poemata Virgilii difficiliora non sunt. Erat amicus Virgilius Augusti. Augustus, imperator, amicus erat fautorque Horatii et Virgilii poetarum.

Page 39. Sect. 44.

Si semper justus tu fuisti, injustitiæ non potes recte accusari. Judex omnis justus esse debet; severus autem non (debet). Judex severus vituperandus semper est; justus autem et severus laudandus. Si semper justus fuisti, meus eris amicus; justus enim est gaudium meum. Non judices solum sed etiam legislatores humani esse debent. Solon, civis clarus Atheniensis, legislator fuit humanus; Draco autem, alius legislator, nimis dicitur fuisse severus. Leges Draconis valde severæ erant. Si solum severæ fuissent, non essent vituperandi; debent enim leges esse severæ.

Page 40. Sect. 45.

Fortuna hominum eadem non est: hi felicissimi, illi miserrimi sunt. Quanquam valde diversa sors est hominum, omnes felices esse possent, dummodo vellent esse contenti. Mens contenta summa felicitas est. Qui vult esse beatus, neque avarus debet esse, neque prodigus, neque invidus. Avaritia, prodigalitas et invidia perennes sæpe fontes miseriæ humanæ, et fuerunt semper, et erunt in posterum. Dictum verum est: omnis mali radix est avaritia. Prodigus tamen æque est vituperandus atque avarus. Avaritia et prodigalitas duo fere paria sunt vitia.

Page 42. Sect. 46.

Bona filia patrem suum, matrem suam, fratres suos, et sorores suas amat. Qui fratrem non amat, quem videt, quomodo amare potest Deum, quem non videt? Is solus Deum amat qui præcepta ejus servat. Præcepta Dei bona sunt. Omnes homines leges Dei servare debent. Qui leges Dei non servat, peccat. Nemo bonus est, nisi is qui amat Deum,

omniaque praecepta ejus servat. Amorem qui optat Dei pius esse debet atque honestus. Proborum hominum amicus est Deus.

Page 43. Sect. 47.

Hic vir multam habet pecuniam, ille hortos multos agrosque. Qui multos habet agros felicior sæpe est quam qui pecuniam habet multam. Manet terra: pecunia perdi potest. Non omnes possunt agros habere et hortos. Fratres mei agri carissimi sunt. Omnino non tam cari sunt tui quam mei agri. Cariores mei quam tui sunt agri; sunt autem meliores. Agri carissimi non semper optimi sunt. Agri multi cari sunt, sed tamen nequam.

Page 45. Sect. 48.

Vir bonus et alios debet amare et se ipsum. Amor Dei primum est praeceptum; secundum autem (est) amor erga nosmetipsos atque alios. Qui semetipsum non amat, Deum non amat; et qui non amat Deum, non amat se ipsum. Omnes Deum, semetipsos, aliosque homines amare debent. Dei erga homines amor major est quam amor hominum erga Deum. Mea erga te amicitia major est quam erga me tua. Mea erga te amicitia eadem semper erit. Mea erga te amicitia est immutabilis. Illa optima est amicitia quæ immutabilis est. Amat me pater meus, et ego eum amo. Qui semetipsum non amat, neque potest revera me amare. Iste est quem æque amo ac me ipsum.

Page 46. Sect. 49.

Laudo equidem justos; injustos autem vitupero. Judex injustus perditor est civitatis. Si rex revera justus est, judices plerumque sunt justiores; superiorem enim timet inferior. Utinam reges semper omnes justii fuissent! reges autem, proh dolor! injustissimi interdum fuerunt. Si ipse injustus rex est, judices injustos punire recte non potest. Cambyzes quidem, rex Persarum, fuit ipse injustissimus: acerrime tamen judicem injustum punivit. Idem homo non semper idem esse videtur. Fredericus magnus, rex Borussiae, fuit rex justissimus. Justii fuerunt etiam judices ejus.

Page 48. Sect. 50.

Debet rex justus punire malos. Homines mali contra bonos sunt. Maximum societatis humanæ malum pravi homines sunt. Pravi dummodo homines non essent, jucundiora esset quam nunc est humana vita. Multi apud nos homines tam boni non sunt quam, si vellent, esse possent. Pravi homines semper fuerunt. Homines mali bonorum sunt inimici. Homines pravi contra leges agunt civitatis. Qui contra leges agit, puniri debet: debent igitur puniri viri pravi. Si perdita legum est auctoritas, perdetur ipsa civitas. Bonæ leges fundamenta civitatis sunt. Quisquis hæc fundamenta labefactat, toti periculum civitati infert: fures igitur et latrones periculum civitati inferunt.

Page 52. Sect. 51.

Romani omnium populorum fuerunt fortissimi. In omnibus fere bellis quæ gerebant fortunati erant. Romanorum disciplina fuit valde severa. Nullus sine disciplina miles vincere potest. Optimum est in bello ferrum; quisquis autem bellum vult gerere, aurum etiam habere debet. Sine anro et ferro nullum hodie bellum geri potest. Pax melior est quam bellum.

Oppida multa Germaniæ magna sunt. Nihil diu de tuo patre audiivi. De bello ab hoste incepto locuti sumus hodie. Homo multorum Socrates virtutum fuit, magni animi, et moderationis raræ. Multi in philosophia instituti sunt a Socrate. Ab horâ tertiâ ibi sum; quum a fratre meo invitatus sim, a quo donum grande recepi. Diruta urbs ab hoste est, de qua tam sæpe sumus locuti. Cræsum, postquam captus est, occidere Cyrus per ignem voluit. Huc ego Romam veni. Multum a præceptore meo de hoc oppido audiivi. Non solum multa a te dona recepi, sed multum etiam a te didici. Homo hic a cane nostro vulneratus est. Boni hi viri a pravis non amantur. Ad tertiam horam hoc audiivi. Domus hæc est patris mei, quæ a patre ipso ædificata est. Hic quidem magni corporis vir est, animi autem exigui. Romanorum imperatorum Nero crudelissimus fuit.

Page 54. Sect. 52.

Magistra hominum optima historia est. Ab antiquissimis temporibus homines isti iidemque fuerunt. Invidia, odium, avaritia, cupiditasque lucri fuerunt semper. Mali contra bonos semper fuerunt, eruntque in posterum. Præditorum historiam quum legimus sæculorum, nostri historiam temporis nobis legere videmur. Qui igitur homines vult cognoscere, is historiam legere debet. Historiæ igitur non utile solum, sed etiam jucundum, studium est.

Page 55. Sect. 53.

Patriam suam ac libertatem magis amabant antiqui Romani quam divitias et opes. Victoriæ multæ pestis fuerunt Romanorum. Secundum Punicum bellum, in quo victores Romani erant, mores eorum maxime corruptit. Plura, quam ulla gens alia, bella gesserunt Romani; plurimisque victores fuerunt. Vix numerari possunt gentes a militibus Romanis victæ. Romani cum Germanis etiam bella multa gesserunt; hæc autem non tam fortunata bella quam cetera fuerunt. Bellum a Varo, duce Romanorum, cum Germanis inceptum, omnium fuit infelicissimum. Major pars militum, necnon ipse Varus, in hoc bello sunt occisi.

Page 59. Sect. 54.

Amare Deum est præceptum primum. Qui vult esse beatus, Deum amare is debet, atque ejus præcepta servare. Nemo, nisi amando Deum, fratrem suum amare potest. Qui ipse probus est amabitur a probis. Si tu me amas, ego te redamabo. Amarent te præceptores tui, si esses sedulus; seduli enim discipuli a præceptoribus suis amantur. Populi omnes regem suum, si est bonus, amabunt. Malus rex a nemine amatur, nisi ab istis qui mali ipsi sunt. Ego te, si melior fuisses, amavissem; sed semper fuisti malus.

Cum quo saxo ad te veni, canem occidi. Canem hunc saxo occidi. Ibo ad eum cum patre meo, et floribus eum ornabo. Cum saxo ad eum ivi quo canem occideram. Terra

cum floribus interiit quibus erat ornata. Cum dolore hoc vidi. Armis bellum geritur: cum his miles contra hostem proficiscitur. Mulier hæc ad me cum auro venit: argento erat ornata. Illustrat sol, cum lunâ, terram. Cum dolore hoc audiui.

Page 61. Sect. 55.

Laudabatur discipulus a præceptore suo, quia sedulus fuerat. Si sedulus semper fuisset, semper fuisset laudatus; discipulus autem diligentiam suam non continuavit. Cessavit præceptor discipulum laudare: imo sæpe eum vituperabat. Cogitavit secum discipulus, „Gratius est laudari quam vituperari; — diligentia etiam quam pigritiâ utilior est:“ et diligentiam continuavit interruptam; imo eam duplicavit. Pueri mutationem præceptor laudavit; et amavit eum postea plus quam antea amaverat. Gaudium in puerum qui erat piger, et diligens est factus, majus esse existimatur quam quando puer fuit semper diligens. An hoc sit justum nescio: plures certe id dubitabunt.

Page 62. Sect. 56.

Sicilia satis magna est insula. Non semper iidem fuerunt ei insulæ domini. In antiquis temporibus Græci, Carthaginienses, et Romani ei imperabant: in temporibus recentibus possidebant eam Francogalli, Hispani, Germani, et alii. Multæ in hac insulâ urbes, eæque magnæ, sunt. Ætna quoque, mons ignivomus, huic inest. Hic mons Vesuvio celsior est.

Page 64. Sect. 57.

Epaminondas Thebanorum maximus fuit. Pauperum parentum filius fuit; sed gloria ejus maxima fuit. Hujus amicus Pelopidas erat. Duces ambo magna bella gerebant. Hæc bella erant prospera. Epaminondæ patria per hoc bellum liberata fuit. Post horum ducum mortem infortunata valde fuit patria eorum.

Multiſ ego urbibus infui: Romæ fui, Athenis, Carthagine. Bibliotheca olim Alexandriæ celeberrima fuit. Prædicavit Paulus evangelium Romæ, Corinthi, Ephesi, Athenis. Archimedes Syracusis docuit. Alexander magnus Babylone mortuus est. Plures in Germaniâ quam in Hispaniâ vivunt homines: istâ in terrâ non tam industrii sunt homines quam in Angliâ. Celeberrimâ fuit, Ephesi, templum Dianæ. Validiores sunt ruri homines quam urbibus. Tres annos in Italiâ, quatuor in Germania, duos autem in Hispania vixi. Plura sunt mari pericula quam terrâ.

Page 66. Sect. 58.

Agesilaus rex fuit Lacedæmoniorum. Rex hic exiguus fuit, et corpore deformis; sed animus ejus fuit magnus. Bellum contra Persas gessit, et in eo victor fuit. Semper Græcorum inimici Persæ erant, ac sæpe in Græciam veniebant. In primo Græcorum contra Persas bello, Miltiades dux fuit Græcorum; rex autem Persarum Darius. Multi in hoc bello Persarum sunt in Græciâ occisi. Xerxes rex in patriâ suâ occisus est. Xerxis patria Persia fuit. Græcia Agesilai, Pelopidæ, Epaminondæ, necnon Miltiadis patria fuit.

Page 67. Sect. 59.

Patriam suam Phocion amabat; patria autem erat ingrata. Ex patriâ suâ pulsus est. Ditissimus fuisse posset; sed valde continens fuit. Philippus, Macedoniæ rex, multum ei pecuniæ misit; hanc autem repudiavit. Pauper semper erat; et filii ejus in eadem erant paupertate. Non tanta fuit fama ejus militaris quanta integritatis ejus gloria, Vitæ ejus finis infelicissima fuit; expulsus enim a civibus est, ac postea occisus.

Page 71. Sect. 60.

Urbs Atheniensium olim celeberrima fuit. Homo sapientissimus in hac urbe Solon fuisse dicitur. Novas leges Atheniensibus tulit. Quare nullam parricidæ pœnam constitueret rogatus respondit, „Quia nemo id est factururus.“ Singularem parricidis pœnam excogitavere Romani: in culeum istos adhuc vivos insuebant, atque in fluvium dejiciebant.

Profectus in Italiam sum, ejusque terræ plerasque urbi-
um visi. Ego in agrum eo, tu in urbem. Romam, Corinthum,
Ephesum, necnon alias urbes, easque multas, misit Paulus
epistolas. In hanc terram missi legati sunt. Ducti sunt
Babylonem Judæi. Hanc in terram invasit hostis, omniaque
devastavit. Hic, postquam damnatus est, in mare fugit, in-
sulamque petivit ubi tutus vivere posset. Cunctæ victi po-
puli opes Romam sunt missæ.

Page 74. Sect. 61.

Xenophon Græcus scriptor clarus fuit, qui plures libros
utiles scripsit. Vitam etiam Socratis scripsit præceptoris
sui. Junioris Cyri fuit amicus. Post Cyri mortem exer-
citum Græcorum in Græciam reduxit. Valde eum amabat
Cyrus; neque a civibus suis non est amatus. Maxime eum
Socrates amabat.

Page 78. Sect. 62.

Fuit Ceres apud Romanos agriculturæ Dea: filia ejus
Proserpina fuit, Plutonis conjux. Pluto deus inferorum fuit,
Jupiter deus cœli, deus autem maris Neptunus. Hi tres dii
fratres fuerunt filiique Saturni. Quisque deorum, apud Ro-
manos signa sua suaque habebat fana. Fanorum horum et
signorum plurima in bellis sunt destructa; nonnulla autem
et fana et signa adhuc sunt reliqua.

Page 79. Sect. 63.

Fertilis insula atque venusta Sicilia est. In temporibus
antiquissimis reges Siciliæ adfuerunt. Pessimi Siciliæ reges
duo Dionysii erant, pater et filius. Expulsus est e patriâ
Dionysius junior, et in Græciâ mortuus est. Neuter horum
regum amabatur a populo, quia neuter populum amabat.
Rex qui non amat populum suum non potest a populo suo
amari. Hiero contra, qui etiam rex fuit hujus insulæ, ab
omnibus sui temporis hominibus amabatur et laudabatur, quia
benignus erat et justus et affabilis. Nulli Dionysio adfue-
runt amici: Hieroni plures.

Page 81. Sect. 64.

Dea venationis Diana fuit, Apollinis soror, filiaque Jovis et Latonæ. Plurimæ hujus deæ signa in urbibus Italicis Græcisque infuerunt. Quum dea venationis esset, arcum habebat et sagittas. Sanctissime eam colebant Græci et Romani. Præfectus Romanus Verres, iste prædo, multa hujus deæ signa asportavit in Siciliam.

Page 86. Sect. 65.

Chremes, the father. — *Clitipho*, the son.

Chr. Quicum loquitur filius?

Clit. Pater adest! Pater, opportunissimus advenis.

Chr. Quid id est?

Clit. Hunc Menedemum nostine, nostrum vicinum?

Chr. Probe.

Clit. Huic filius est.

Chr. Id audiui. In Asiâ est.

Clit. In Asiâ non est, pater. Apud nos est.

Chr. Quid ais?

Clit. Hodie advenientem illico adduxi ad cœnam; nam mihi magna cum eo, jam inde usque a pueritia, fuit semper familiaritas.

Chr. Voluptatem magnam nuncias mihi. Utinam nobiscum esset hodie Menedemus, ut primus ille filium aspiceret. Atque etiam nunc tempus est.

Clit. Ne voca eum, pater. Nimis timet amicus meus patris suæ iram.

Page 88. Sect. 66.

Clinia, Son of Menedemus.

Nulla mihi res posthac potest jam intervenire tanta quæ mihi ægritudinem afferat: tanta mihi lætitia est. Nunc iterum propitius pater meus et amicus est. Gaudii hujus vicinus meus Chremes causa est. Omnia faciam quæ probus hic vir dixit; nam consilium ejus totum bonum esse video ac salutare. Senex est pater meus: frugalis erò, illi obediam, et ita vivam ut beata sit patris mei senectus. Vicinus noster Chremes semper nobis amicus fuit, nunc autem maxime: ad

eum vadam, ut gratias ei agam. Nisi Chremes adfuisset, adhuc etiam puer infelix essem; nunc autem sum felicissimus hominum. Totum hoc gaudium Chremeti debeo, probo huic viro, ac sincero patris mei amico.

Hic vir tres annos in Angliâ fuit. Domus tua quinquaginta pedes longa, triginta lata, quadraginta autem alta est. Quinque tantum pedes altus sum. Hæc fossa sex pedes est alta. Elephas decem pedes, plerumque, longus; duodecim autem est altus. Quarto suo anno rex electus est; quinto autem est mortuus. Plurima his temporibus contingere mala. Quarto die est natus, tertiâ hora. Hic morbus annos quinque duravit, neque decessit nobis nisi sexto. Hic rex, quum bene multos annos regnasset, anno regni sui tricesimo, mense hujusce anni tertio, die hujusce mensis quinto, mortuus est.

Page 93. Sect. 67.

‘Fratres inter se amare debent, atque alius alium adjuvare. Frater fratrem, melius quam alienus, adjuvare potest. Dummodo possem omnes adjuvare, maximum mihi gaudium esset; quid enim dulcius est quam alios adjuvare. Bene aliis facere multi cupiunt; sed non possunt; sunt enim nimis pauperes. Etiam si quis pauper est, consilio certe alios adjuvare potest. Qui bene nobis facit, is noster amicus est, eumque præcipue debemus amare: attamen inimicos etiam amare debemus, et ubicumque possimus, consilioque actuque adjuvare.

Page 94. Sect. 68.

Amor amicitiae fons, non lucrum, est. Quanta sit hujusce amoris potentia, nonnullis animalibus percipi potest, pullos suos summopere amantibus, ac valde vehementer ab his amatis. Multo etiam magis hoc apud homines videmus. Quantus inter parentes ac liberos, quantus inter veros amicos amor mutuus est! Quos etiam nunquam vidimus, eos tamen propter virtutem eorum ac probitatem amamus.

Page 96. Sect. 69.

Assentatio perniciosa est; qui autem eam recipit, ei solum nocere potest. Non placet assentatio bonis; multi autem hominum, qui boni non sunt, ut boni videantur cupiunt. Istos assentatio delectat. Vanum dictum isti laudationem putant. Illis amicitia non est, quorum hic quod verum est non vult audire, ille autem ad mentiendum est paratus. Qui aures suas patefacit assentatoribus, is perditus est. Semper nobis assentator hostis est. Nihil petit nisi suum lucrum ac pecuniam nostram. Quum nostram pecuniam nactus est, assumus igitur pauperes, derelinquit nos, necnon vituperat tanquam nimis credulos.

Hic vir isto validior est. Melius tu quam ego scribes. Africa Europâ major est. Tibi magis quam fratri tuo dona dabo; quanquam melior te ille est. Longiores in hiberno tempore noctes diebus sunt. Hic regi magis placet quam reginæ. Iste vir meo fratre doctior est. Dentes ossibus sunt duriores. Probos quam improbos Deus melius amat. Minor Anglia quam Germania est. Ætna Vesuvio altior est. Plus te diligo quam fratrem tuum. Tibi magis confidimus quam fratri tuo.

Page 98. Sect. 70.

Multi hominum eos habere volunt amicos qui ipsi esse non possunt; et quod ipsi facere non possunt id ex amicis requirunt. Ipse prior quisque bonus esse, ac postea similem sibi quærere debet. Hujusmodi tantum homines veri amici possunt esse. Justus uterque ac patiens ac fidelis esse debet; atque alter alterius res omnes in semetipsum debet recipere. Neuter nisi quod justum sit atque honestum ab altero requirere debet. Hujusmodi amicitiae inest omne quod optandum est: virtus, dignitas, animi tranquillitas, oblectatio: hæ ubi adsint beata vita est; sed sine his beata esse non potest.

Page 102. Sect. 71.

Sine somno nemo vivere potest. Nec nimis longus debet esse, nec nimis brevis somnus hominum: utrique inest periculum. Haud æque graviter dormiunt senes ac pueri. Quum dormit homo, silent dolores sui omnes atque curæ. Sollicitis igitur hominibus ac miseris gratum somnus donum est. Quum dormiunt homines, neque audiunt neque vident. Dormiens neque videre neque audire potest.

Page 106. Sect. 72.

Qui valens esse vult, is temperans esse debet. Bonum sanitatis præsidium munditiæ est. Mane dentes defricandi sunt, manus sapone et aquâ lavandæ, secandi ungues, pecten-
daque coma. Oculi aquâ frigidâ lavandi, atque aures pur-
gandi sunt.

Page 109. Sect. 73.

Cræsus, a Cyro rege Persarum victus, jam in rogo stans ut cremaretur, semel atque iterum nomen Solonis exclamavit. Hoc Cyrus audiens, quare ita faceret, interrogavit. Narravit ei Cræsus omne quod olim sibi Solon dixerat. Cyrus vitam ei concessit.

Page 110. Sect. 74.

Cræsi filius mutus a pueritiâ esse dicitur. Pro voce suâ hosti gratias debuit. Patrem hostis occidisset, nisi clamavisset filius „Regem Cræsum ne occide!“ Ita strenuus fuit pueri nisus ut linguæ nodum rumperet. Hic nisus et vitam servavit patri, et filio vocem. An vera sit narratio hæc, non constat. Plurimæ hujusmodi fabulæ narrantur.

Page 111. Sect. 75.

Vitam Cyri legentes, a Xenophonte scriptam, facile hujus regis amore amplectimur. Quam pulchre de virtute, ac de vita post mortem, filios suos alloquitur! Nos Cyri vitam, a

Xenophonte scriptam, veram volumus fuisse. Hæc autem vita valde fabulosa est atque falsa. Si vera hæc vita fuisset, Cambyses, Cyri filius, tam crudelis certe non fuisset quam fuit. Hic rex crudelis suum fratrem germanum occidit.

Quum tu me invitaveris, veni. Romani quum bellum inciperent, hoc prius indicebant. Diligens esse debes, quum hoc præcipiat Deus. Quum Tullus Hostilius factus rex est, plurima gesserunt bella Romani. Juste agere debemus, quum id Deus atque leges requirant. Quum in patriam nostram invasurus hostis sit, huic nos obviam ibimus. Socrates profecto fuit vir honestus, quum tam multos, eosque egregios, institueret discipulos. Quum domum ex foro rediret, Xantippe conjux ejus eum vituperare solebat quia domi non mansisset. Romulus quum rex fuit, virgines ut raperent Sabinas civibus mandavit, conjuges istis non habentibus. Quum ita res se habeat, ego te non vituperabo.

Page 113. Sect. 76.

Ita conjurati virtute ac nobilitate pares erant qui malum regem interfecerant, ut novum deligere regem difficile esset. Rationem tamen excogitavere conjurati. Pactionem inter se fecere ut omnes, die stato, mane equos ante palatium regium ducerent, atque rex ut is esset cujus equus primus ad solis ortum hinniret. Solus enim apud Persas deus Sol est, atque huic deo equi dicari solent. Inter conjuratos Darius fuit, Hysdaspis filius, primus cujus equus hinnivit: hic itaque rex est factus. Cæteris moderatio tanta fuit, ut repente ex equis desiluerint ac Darium tanquam regem salutaverint.

Page 117. Sect. 77.

Regi Dario fidelis Zopyrus amicus fuit; sibi autem valde crudelis. Quid crudelius esse potest quam nasum sibimet atque aures atque labia præcidere? Hoc autem omne fecit ut rex urbem vinceret. Urbem quidem cepit rex Darius; sed Zopyrus homo mutilatus, sine naso, sine auribus, sine labiis fuit. Ipse Zopyrum Darius sine commiseratione ad-

spicere non potuit. Si prius Darium Zopyrus consulisset, fœdam hanc lacerationem nequaquam ille permisisset.

Page 119. Sect. 78.

Magnam habet similitudinem diluvio Noachi diluvium in tempore Deucalionis. Æque Deucalion quam Noachus navem construxit, seque cum paucis servavit. Historiæ tamen Deucalionis magna pars est valde fabulosa. Lapides post terga jecisse dicuntur is et conjux ejus, ut novum de novo constitueretur genus humanum. Hi lapides homines sunt facti; novi autem homines isti duri atque crudeles fuerunt.

Tanta copia stellarum est, ut numerari non possint. Hoc feci, ut tu lætareris. Eum quum vidi sum amplexus. Mores ita mali multorum sunt ut vix eos hominum loco habere possimus. Tantum huic regioni frigus inest, ut ibi neque homines neque pecudes vivere possint. Hoc ita feci ut tu jussisti. Quum in urbem veni, multa illa ædificia atque magnifica sum contemplatus, ut aliquid haberem quod tibi narra-rem. Multi, ut ab aliis laudarentur, alios laudant. Ita potens Deus est, ut omnia possit efficere. Ad eum quum adsum, ita eum tristem invenio ut prorsus delectari non possit. Ita Socratis judices iniqui fuerunt, ut eum condemnaverint. Hoc ego feci, ne tristis tu fias. Maximus apud nos metus est ne veniret hostis.

Page 122. Sect. 79.

Inter clarissimos Athenarum reges Theseus fuit. Multa de hoc rege, sed fabulosa tamen, narrantur. Huic pater Ægeus fuit. Iste se in mare præcipitavit quod, proinde, „mare Ægeum“ dicitur. Metuebat Ægeus ne Theseus filius suus a Minotauro esset interfectus. Huic regi si cognita res vera esset, haudquaquam se in mare dejecisset. Quadraginta annos apud Athenienses regnavit.

Page 123. Sect. 80.

Alexander, rex Macedoniæ, valde lenis fuit ac benignus erga conjugem atque filias Darii. Alexandri captivæ hæ erant, regisque illius crudelitatem valde metuebant. Magna tamen admiratio eas habuit, ut tam lenem Alexandrum ac benignum inveniebant. Quum hæc Alexandri benignitas Dario est nuntiata, valde commotus in animo fuit, literasque Alexandro misit, quibus, multas ei gratias agens, quæsivit ab eo, ut sibi etiam amicus fieret. Alexander, qui se tam benignum præbuerat erga conjugem filiasque Darii, erga ipsum Darium fuit durissimus.

Page 125. Sect. 81.

Agesilaus rex atque dux fuit Lacedæmoniorum, necnon vir sui ætatis honestissimus. Omne quod bonum fuerit dilexit, omne quod malum aversatus est. Multi ab eo beneficia accepere; nemo autem ab eo fuit unquam spoliatus. Servus illi somnus, nunquam dominus fuit. Durus ei semper lectus erat. Magnum in æstate æstum, in hieme magnum frigus tolerabat. Laborem valde dilexit, ac plus semper quam milites ejus laborabat. In conviviis hilaris erat atque lætus. Ob hanc rem multi eum sæpe visebant. Longe ab jactantia aberat; eos, tamen, qui sese laudarent, libenter audiebat: nemini enim nocebant, ac quasi qui fortitudinem amarent se præbebant. Semper ante populi oculos vitam degebat; neque non omnibus id omne patebat quod facere solebat.

Page 126. Sect. 86.

Romulus et Remus a Faustulo pastore educati sunt. Pueros hos duo prope Tiberim, ubi ab avo eorum erant expositi, Faustulus invenit. Per longum tempus nihil omnino de parentibus suis pueri cognoscebant. Faustulus tandem totam eis rem aperuit. Romulum ceperunt latrones, atque ad Amalium regem duxere. Rex in carcerem Romulum conjecit. Hic res Faustulum coegit ut aperiret Romulo stirpem ejus.

Page 129. Sect. 83.

Geryones rex dicitur fuisse Hispaniæ, eique tria corpora, tria capita, atque sex brachia fuisse. Valde venustos hic rex boves possidebat. Mandavit Eurystheus Herculi, ut hos boves ei adduceret. Ab Hercule, quum in Italiâ cum his bobus esset, nonnullos eorum furto Cacus abegit, ac retro in speluncam traxit; hunc autem dolum Hercules invenit, atque clavâ suâ Cacum interfecit. Fortis Cacus, multo autem fortior Hercules fuit. Hercules, quum Cacum interfecisset, in Græciam rediit. In Italiâ postea pro deo est adoratus. Adorationis ejus auctor Evander fuit, qui ex Græciâ in Italiam profugerat.

Page 131. Sect. 84.

Imperium ita potens Romanum erat, ut par esset vicinis quibuslibet civitatibus: deerant autem feminae. Haud longum tempus sine feminis civitas durare posset. Legatos igitur Romulus de conjugis ad populos vicinos misit; comiter autem nusquam legati hi recepti sunt. Hæ gentes contempsere Romanos; neque non, eodem tempore, vim crescentem eorum metuere. Plures dixerunt, „Nostras vobis filias dare nolumus; nostræ enim honestæ filiaë sunt, vos autem estis latrones.“ Valde hoc indignati erant juvenes Romani, ac violentiam sibi proponere cœpere. Hoc ut adjuvaret consilium, spectaculum Romulus vicinis indixit.

Page 133. Sect. 85.

Antiqui Romani conjuges rapuere. Ad hoc Romanos impulit vicinorum superbia. Nemo Romano cuique filiam suam nuptum dare voluit. Romani ad vicinos omnes populos legationes miserant, atque horum filias ut eis darent poposcerant. Hoc negantibus vicinis, dolo ac violentiâ usi sunt Romani, et quod parentes suâ sponte dare recusaverunt, id illi rapuerunt. Proinde bellum inter populos vicinos atque Romanos ortum est. Maxime inter Romanos et Sabinos bellum fuit; nam plurimæ ex raptis puellis Sabinorum filiaë fuerunt. Attamen hoc bellum amicum habuit finem.

Page 134. Sect. 86.

Hoc prœlium videntes conjuges Sabinæ Romanorum, militantibus intervenire ac patres maritosque dehortabantur, ne soceri illi ac generi alteri alterorum sanguine sese contaminarent. „In nos“, dixerunt, „dirigite iram; nos enim belli hujus causa; nostris nos causa patribus atque maritis vulnerum mortisque sumus.“ Militesque ducesque hæc res movebat. Silentium fecit, subitamque quietem. Inde pacem fecerunt duces, atque unam ex duabus, imperia conjungentes, civitatem constituerunt.

Page 136. Sect. 87.

Post Romuli mortem erat interregnum. Decem viri sunt electi, quorum quisque dies quinque imperabat, neque longius omnes simul uno anno. Hoc autem imperium breve tempus populo placuit; quum decem pro uno dominos habere visi fuerint. Decreverunt igitur senatores electum iri regem. Valde id temporis laudabantur atque extollebantur Numæ Pômpilii justitia et religio. Hunc igitur Romanorum regem senatores delegerunt.

Page 137. Sect. 88.

Tullus Hostilius rex tertius Romanorum fuit. Adhuc juvenis electus, pacem minus quam Numa amabat. Ipso etiam Romulo bellicosior fuisse dicitur. Avi audacia, qui tam fortiter in Romanorum et Sabinorum bello militaverat, in ipso quoque se ostendit. Belli suscipiendi mox occasio orta est. Pecora Romani ab Albanis, Albani ex agro Romano abegerant. Legati ab utrisque, ad pecora repetenda, missi sunt. Bellum Tullus cupiens dolo est usus, atque hoc modo bellum exoriri fecit. Romani in hoc bello victoriam sunt adepti, ex duobus populi unus est factus, atque diruta urbs Albanorum est.

Page 139. Sect. 89.

Horatius, qui trigeminos fratres Albanos vicerat, re crudelissima suo nomini offecit. Sponsa soror ejus alicui e Curiatiiis fuit, vestemque illa sponsi super fratris humerum aspi-

ciens, flebat. Hanc ipsa vestem finxerat, ideoque eam ex templo agnovit. Sororis fletus fratris iram conflavit; is gladium strinxit, ac puellam transfixit. Immane hoc factum senatoribus populoque visum est; atque juvenis ad regem est adductus. Rex cœtum populi advocavit. Orabat pater pro filio suo. Populus, ut patris ferret lacrymas impotens, filium, admiratione potius fortitudinis ejus quam pro rei justitiâ, absolvit. Horatia ubi interfecta ibi sepulta est. Ita victoria clara crudelissimâ cæde obscurata est.

Page 140. Sect. 90.

Mettus Albanorum rex Romanis non fuit fidus. Itâ acriter puniebatur perfidia ejus, ut omnes a spectaculo oculos averterent. Corpus ejus ab equis dilaceratum est. Deinde, dirutâ urbe Albanorum, cives Romam sunt adducti. Urbem cives derelinquentes, plateas planctibus suis complebant Urbem quum cives dereliquissent funditus destructæ ædes sunt. Una hora quadringentorum annorum opus ruinis dedit.



